

174
5

THE
R U D I M E N T S
OF THE
LATIN TONGUE;
IN WHICH,
THE DIFFICULTIES
OF ALL THE PARTS
OF OUR
LATIN GRAMMARS
ARE MADE PLAIN TO THE
CAPACITIES OF CHILDREN.

BY JAMES BARCLAY, A. M.
RECTOR of the Grammar School of *Dalkeith*.

EDINBURGH:

Printed for the AUTHOR, and sold by the Booksellers there;
and at *London* by A. MILLAR, R. and J. DODSLEY,
T. LONGMAN, J. NOURRE, and D. WILSON.

M.DCC.LVIII.

15

Entered in STATIONERS-HALL according to
Act of Parliament.



TO HIS GRACE,

H E N R Y

Duke of B U C C L E U G H,

Earl of D A L K E I T H, &c.

THE Obligations I received from your late noble Grandfather, to whom I owe the Office I now hold under you, have made me presume to make this Address to your Grace. It gives me the best Opportunity of expressing my Gratitude, and declaring that I will always rejoice at the Happiness of your illustrious Family. But I am, at the same Time, further prompted to it, by

by the agreeable Hopes, that what is contained in this GRAMMAR, may tend to facilitate that Part of your Education. Your Grace, I am sensible, is under the best Direction, and cannot fail of having it in your Power to be taught all that is necessary to adorn the Mind of a great and good Man. But if, at any Time, you do me the Honour to look into this Performance, and should happen to reap any Benefit from it, it will give great Pleasure to

Your most obliged,

Most obedient, and

Most humble Servant,

JAMES BARCLAY.

P R E F A C E.

PEople have never, perhaps, been more divided in their Opinions about any Thing than Grammar: Some will have little or none at all to be taught, and some insist upon it as the chief Thing to be regarded in the Education of Children. The first Opinion is certainly the worst, and of most dangerous Consequence: For, if the Observations made by able Grammarians, be necessary to understand the *Latin* Language, Boys must either acquire them by the Help of such Performances, or learn them afterwards themselves by Experience. But Observations of this Kind upon the Nature and Agreement of Words, are not so easily made; especially in Youth, when Children can hardly be brought to understand the Rules compiled by others, with a View to their Instruction. But granting them to be wiser than they are, and that they were able to make a Sort of Rules for themselves, why put them to that Trouble, when they are already much better made to their Hands? And is it not in some Measure giving up the Point, to argue in this Way, since the very supposing the Necessity of such Observations, implies, at the same Time, the Usefulness of Grammar in acquiring Language: For these Observations, after they are made, can never be reckoned any Thing else but Grammar Rules; tho' they behaved, indeed, to be very imperfect, and much inferior to such as have been collected by the Learned from Time to Time; who, for several Generations, have gradually improved upon one another, by a particular Application to the Study of Grammar.

BUT

BUT when we talk against Grammar, we probably have no Intention to destroy or vilify the Grammatical Systems already made, but would only save Children the Trouble of too much of this Sort of Learning in the Beginning. In this Case, there is evidently much less Absurdity in what is advanced; for tho', on the one Hand, it were a Pity to want any of the Observations made upon the *Latin* Language, it is as plain, on the other, that too great a Number of Grammar Rules greatly perplex Multitudes of the Boys, who read together in Grammar Schools. But what hinders the Master to prevent Inconveniences of this Kind, by teaching the Boys under his Care, more or less of these Rules, in Proportion to their Strength of Genius or Memory? Were this Method carefully observed, it would soon remove any Complaints of this Kind, and the slowest Boys, with proper Assistance and Encouragement, might easily get over the Difficulties of Grammar. All that is requisite, is giving them a little more Time, and taking Care not to oppress them with too much at once. For very often, it is not so much the Want of Capacity in Children, that makes the Grammar appear to be so difficult, as the Want of Skill in a Master, who, in teaching it, is at little or no Pains to accommodate himself to their several Abilities.

THE chief Cause, however, of all such Objections, proceeds from the common Practice of instructing Children in the Beginning, by tedious *Latin* Rules. These are generally so difficult, that many of the Boys are a long Time before they can mandate or explain them; and very often, after they have been at that Trouble, forget one Part while they are employed about another, and come away at last, little wiser than if they had never read the *Latin* Grammar at all. But to remedy this Evil, there is no Occasion either for abolishing Grammar entirely, or for abridging it
into

into the narrow Compass of a Sheet or two, as a great many think eligible. The better Way to please all Parties, would be intirely to alter the Method of our Schools, and teach the several Parts of Grammar in our Mother Tongue, according to the Practice of neighbouring Nations. This I am convinced would help to remove the Difficulty complained of, and make People, in Time coming, no more averse to Grammar, than to any other Part of Knowledge whatever.

'Tis with this View, *viz.* That Children may be taught the first Principles in a more easy and familiar Manner, that I have been at the Pains to publish the following Grammar. I hope it will be found so plain and easy, that the youngest will apprehend the Meaning as fast as they read. And is not this a great Point gained, the saving all that Time and Labour, both to Masters and Scholars, before Boys could be made to explain and apply all the Parts of the *Latin* Grammar? But here they will find every Thing explained and applied to their Hand. The Difference is so great, that, whereas formerly it took up three Years before they knew any Thing of *Etymology*, and almost three more were spent before they finished *Syntax* and *Prosody*; I don't know but one might engage in this Way to teach them all the four Parts of Grammar in less than Half of the Time.

It may be objected, That such a Performance as this was not necessary, as all the Advantages that can possibly arise from it, might have been acquired by making Use of Mr. RUDDIMAN'S *Rudiments*. The Answer to this Objection is, That the *Rudiments*, so far as they go, are unexceptionable, and do indeed contain more than is required by such as are for abridging the grammatical Part of Education. But what shall we say to the rest of the World, who have a higher Opinion of Grammar, and think the Education of Children neglected,

neglected, if all the Rules are not carefully taught ? They would certainly be much offended, if, to humour the Prejudices of other People, we should neglect to explain what has been further observed, even by Mr. *Ruddiman* himself, in his larger Grammar : And many of his Observations are, in my Opinion, so useful, that Children could not succeed well in their Education without them. Such are the Rules concerning the Genders of Nouns, the Conjugation of simple and compound Verbs, in what is called *Etymology* ; and in his Grammatical Syntax, there are many valuable Things, which are not to be found in his *Rudiments*. The Necessity of explaining the *Profody* was still stronger, as there are very few who understand it as they ought to do : Yet it is fully as easy as the rest, and the Difficulty can only arise from the Method in which it has hitherto been taught, and the Language in which it is expressed.

ALL these Things I have endeavoured to make as plain as possible, by adapting the Style and Manner to the Capacities of the youngest. Nevertheless, I hope the eldest and most acquainted with the *Latin* Tongue, will take the Trouble to read it. They will certainly be something the better for it, and allow, at least, that such a Grammar as this, is very proper in the Education of Children. In a particular Manner, it will be serviceable to such as have forgot the *Latin* entirely, and want to recover it ; or to such as have learned nothing of it at all, and yet would fain attempt it, were they not afraid of the Difficulty arising from Grammar, which the World imagines to be very abstruse ; tho' it be quite otherwise, when it is properly digested and clearly explained.

ANOTHER great Objection against this Grammar, is, That Boys, by this Means, would learn the Grammar so easily, and so soon, that their Parents would not know what to do with them, or
how

how to dispose of them when they came so early from School. This indeed is a strange Way of Reasoning; as if there was a Necessity of taking them from School at a certain Time of Life, whether they be ready for the World or not; and as if Schools, as some People foolishly imagine, were good for nothing, but to keep Children out of Harm's Way in the Streets. One would think on the contrary, considering the Shortness of Life, and the Importance of Knowledge, that we would be greatly against losing one Moment of our Childrens Time, and be rather anxious they should be taught, as soon as possible, all that is necessary to make them good and valuable Members of Society: And above all, that they should, without loss of Time, get over the Difficulties of Grammar, without which they cannot understand Language, and cannot consequently advance to the higher Parts of Study, nor profit by reading the Antients. But even after Grammar is understood, the learned Languages are not so easily nor so quickly to be obtained, as some People imagine; especially by Children. They are generally very heedless, and it is a long Time before one can make most of them think at all, or speak so much as one Sentence correctly in their Mother Tongue, which they have notwithstanding been accustomed to from their Infancy. This all Teachers certainly know to their woful Experience, in spite of all that we hear about very bright Boys, who are said to be Masters of the *Greek* and *Latin* in two or three Years. The Meaning of such as talk in this Way, cannot well be determined, except we knew exactly what they call understanding the *Greek* and *Latin*. For my Share, I think it a very difficult Thing, and

b

hardly

hardly to be acquired after several Years, by People of mature Age: Nor can I help observing here, that the modern Way of hurrying the Education of Youth, argues but too little Regard for Learning, among such as are old, and greatly ruins the Improvement of Children both at Schools and Colleges.

*Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian Spring,
A little Learning is a dangerous Thing.*

POPE.

PEOPLE mistake therefore, who imagine they would be under a Necessity of taking their Children so soon from their Studies, either from a false Notion, that Language is so easily got, or that mere Words are all that Boys are capable of, or have Occasion for, during the Time they continue at School. For besides the Languages, they might there be taught much other useful Knowledge. Why might they not, for Instance, from *Horace*, or such of the Classick Authors as write like him with Judgment and Reflection, be made to apprehend a strong Sense of Honour and Honesty; which afterwards, in the Conduct of Life, distinguishes such as make any Figure in the World, or really deserve the Esteem of Mankind? And such moral Instructions would afterwards the more strongly animate their Conduct, that they were inculcated in Youth, when Children receive the strongest Impressions, and are less apt to forget what they learn. Besides, every good Lesson taught them at that Time, is of the greatest Importance, as upon their Education in Youth depends their future Happiness in Life. For what signifies all the *Greek* and *Latin* in the World, when Masters neglect to regulate the Hearts of Children,

dren, and subdue their headstrong Passions : I must also add, if they are not, above all, taught a due Regard for GOD and Religion, without which human Prudence is but Vanity.

BUT what Advantages of this Kind can Boys receive, if they are immediately to leave School after they have read the four Parts of Grammar, according to the vulgar Way of speaking? These are only the Ground-Work, which must first indeed be firmly laid; yet the Reason of our being at so much Pains about them, is only for the valuable Structure that may afterwards be raised, by making a proper Use of Language, in the further Acquisition of Knowledge. The longer therefore Boys continue at School, after they have read Grammar, the more I should think it would be for their Interest, especially if their Parents design them for Scholars.—To such, the Acquisition of the Languages is all in all, because, if they be neglected in Youth, they seldom or never apply to them afterwards. But the Season for Philosophy is never over, as long as we live; we may always find Leisure for the Study of human Nature, and the different Sciences, that are designed for the Improvement of the Understanding, and the Benefit of Mankind. In such a Course of Study, the older the better, and the more we shall be capable of judging, how far the Observations of the Philosophers we read, are agreeable to Truth and Experience, which is the undoubted Standard of all true Philosophy. But however necessary such speculative Knowledge may be, and however useful in the Conduct of Life, it must be unquestionably acknowledged, to be far above the weak Capacities of Children at thirteen or fourteen Years of Age.

To

To conclude : If these *Rudiments* be thought too long for Children, any Master may make them as short as he pleases, by teaching only what Parts he thinks necessary. The rest may either be taught afterwards, as they advance gradually, or omitted entirely : For tho' he may here meet with some Things which he reckons superfluous, it lays him under no Necessity of teaching them. Neither ought he to condemn what is useful, tho' he finds it incumbered with what he does not look upon in the same favourable Light. — I have only executed a Plan which many Gentlemen were very desirous of, for the greater Ease and Advantage of their Children. And as I have already observed, I am convinced it will save a great deal of Time and Trouble, both to Masters and Scholars. This, I hope, will be sufficient to recommend it to the impartial World.

As to the Title of this Book, it might as well have been called the *Latin Grammar* as the *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue*, since it equally comprehends both. It will also be found to answer the End and Design of a Vocabulary ; and has besides, almost in every Page of the *Etymology*, a great many useful Observations for Children, under the Article of *English Grammar*. This I take to be so necessary, not only for the Sake of our own, but for the better understanding the dead Languages, that I am surpris'd it is so much neglected in the Education of both Sexes. The least early Care, in this Respect, would greatly forward the Education of Children, and prevent a great many Blunders in Conversation, which even People of a more advanced Age are but too often falling into, for the want of *English Grammar*.

T H E

T H E R U D I M E N T S O F T H E L A T I N T O N G U E .

Quest. **W**HAT is Grammar?

Answ. The Art of speaking or writing any Language well.

Q. How many Parts of Grammar are there?

A. Four; ORTHOGRAPHY, PROSODY, ETYMOLOGY, and SYNTAX.

Q. What is Orthography?

A. That Part of Grammar which treats of the Nature and Division of Letters, so far as they are conducive to writing well.

Q. What is Prosody?

A. That which treats of the Quantity of Syllables, with their different Accents, and the Art of making Verses.

Q. What is Etymology?

A. That Part of Grammar which treats about Words, or the different Parts of Speech.

Q. What is Syntax?

A. The right ordering of Words in Speech.

Q. How ought the Parts of Grammar to be taught, according to their natural Order?

A. Orthography in the first Place, then Prosody, then Etymology, and last of all Syntax.

Q. What Order is to be observed in these *Rudiments*?

A. The following, *viz.* 1. Orthography. 2. Etymology. 3. Syntax. 4. Prosody.

Q. Why is Prosody treated of last, when it ought to be considered in the second Place?

A. Because it is not so necessary at first; as Boys make a Shift to read for some Time with proper Quantity, by frequent Practice, and the Help of the Master.

Q. When should Children begin to read Prosody?

A. When the Master thinks proper; perhaps, a little before they begin Poetry.

A

Of

2 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of ORTHOGRAPHY.

Q. HOW many Letters are there among the *Latins*?

A. Five and twenty; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

Q. How are they divided?

A. Into Vowels and Consonants.

Q. How many Vowels are there?

A. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

Q. How many Consonants?

A. Nineteen; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

Q. How many Diphthongs are there?

A. Five; *ae* or *æ*, *oe* or *œ*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as, *aetas* or *ætās*, *poena* or *pœna*, *audio*, *euge*, *hei*.

Q. What is a Vowel?

A. A Letter which forms a distinct Sound by itself, without the Help of any other.

Q. What is a Consonant?

A. It is a Letter which cannot be sounded by itself, except it be joined to a Vowel.

Q. How are the Consonants divided?

A. Into single and double Consonants.

Q. What are the single Consonants?

A. Such as, when joined to a Vowel, have no more than one Sound; that is, all the Consonants except *x* and *z*.

Q. Why are *x* and *z* called double Consonants?

A. Because they have each of them separately the Sound of two Consonants; as, *dux*, where *x* sounds *cs*; and *zona*, where *z* sounds *ds*.

Q. Is there any other Division of the Consonants?

A. They are divided into Mutes, and Half-Vowels or *Semivocales*.

Q. How many Mutes are there?

A. Nine; *b, c, d, g, j, k, p, q, t.*

Q. How many *Semivocales*?

A. Four; *l, m, n, r*; to which some add *f, h, s, v.*

Q. What is the Difference betwixt the Mutes and *Semivocales*?

A. The Mutes, without the Addition of a Vowel, cannot possibly make any Sound at all; the *Semivocales* are nearer the Nature of Vowels, and are so called, because they make half a Sound by themselves, even tho' they be not joined to a Vowel.

Q. What

Q. What is a Diphthong?

A. A Diphthong is a Sound consisting of two Vowels, pronounced in such a Manner as that both may be heard; as, *audio*.

Q. How are the Diphthongs divided?

A. Into proper and improper.

Q. How many are proper?

A. Three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*.—They are called proper, because the Sound of both Vowels is distinctly heard.

Q. How many are improper?

A. Two; *æ* and *œ*, which are called improper, because the Sound of one Vowel only is heard in the Pronunciation; as, *ætas*, *pœna*; where the two Diphthongs have only the Sound of the Vowel *e*.

Q. Are not Letters used by the *Romans* to express Numbers?

A. Yes.

Q. What Letters do they use in this Way?

A. These seven; *I*, *V*, *X*, *L*, *C*, *D*, *M*; as, *I*. stands for one; *V*. 5; *X*. 10; *L*. 50; *C*. 100; *D*. or *ID*. 500; *M*. or *CID*. 1000; *IDC*. 5000; *CCIDC*. 10000; *ICCC*. 50000; *CCCCIDC*. 100000.—In the same Manner, by these Letters may be expressed, the Number of the present Year since the Birth of our SAVIOUR; *CID.ID.CC.LVIII*. or *M.DCC.LVIII*. 1758.

Of ETYMOLOGY.

Q. **H**OW many Parts of Speech are there?

A. Eight; *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*.

Q. How are they divided?

A. Into declinable and indeclinable.

Q. How many are declinable?

A. Four; *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*.

Q. How many are indeclinable?

A. Likewise four; *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*.

Q. When are *Latin Words* said to be declinable?

A. When they admit of a Change in the Termination or last Syllable; as, *Nom. penna*, *Gen. pennæ*.

Q. When are they said to be indeclinable?

A. When they admit of no Change in the Termination, but continue always the same; as, *ad*, *apud*, *ante*.

Q. How

4 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. How are these Changes made upon declinable Words?

A. By what the Grammarians call *Accidents*.

Q. How many are the Accidents of the declinable Parts of Speech?

A. Six; *Gender, Case, Number; Mood, Tense, Person.*

Q. To the Declension of what Words are the three first of these Accidents applied?

A. To the Declension of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles.

Q. What are the three last applied to?

A. To the Verb only.

Of the DECLENSION of NOUNS.

Q. HOW is a Noun declined?

A. By *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

Q. What is it you call the Gender of a Noun?

A. Philosophically speaking, it is the Distinction of Nouns, according to their different Sexes, Male or Female: But Grammarians, by Gender, mean nothing more than the Fitness of a Substantive Noun to be joined to an Adjective of such a Termination, and not to another.

Q. How many Genders are there in this Way of explaining it?

A. Three; *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

Q. Are

OBSERVATIONS on ENGLISH NOUNS.

There are only two Genders in the English Language, Masculine and Feminine; for all living Creatures are either called *he* or *she*; and Things without Life are commonly expressed by *it* — Nor are the different Cases distinguished by any Change in the Termination or End of the Word, which continues always the same. The Nominative is no more than the Thing designed to be expressed; as, *Fruit, Ice*; but frequently these Articles are joined to it, *a* before a Consonant, *an* before a Vowel; and *the*; as, *a Man, an Arm, the Pen*. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite Article, denoting something in general; as, *A Book, An Arm*. *The* is called the definite Article, because it makes a particular Application of the Noun to which it is affixed; as, *the Horse*. — To express the Genitive, they put the Particle *of* before any Noun; *to* or *for* makes the Dative; the Accusative is the same with the Nominative; the Vocative hath *O* before it; and the Ablative is expressed by the Particles *with, from, in, or by*.

The English have also two Numbers, Singular and Plural. The Plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the Singular; but there are many Exceptions from this Rule; as, *Calf Calves, Man Men, Die Dice, Mouse Mice, Child Children, &c.*

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 5.

Q. Are not these Genders sometimes compounded together, and applied to one Word?

A. Yes; the Common Gender, as it is called, is both Masculine and Feminine, and joined to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *parens*, a Father or Mother, &c.

Q. What is it you call the Gender common to three?

A. It belongs only to Adjectives, and comprehends both Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; as, *tener, tenera, tenerum*, tender.

Q. What do you mean by the Cases?

A. The Cases serve to express the different Relation, in which a Noun may be supposed to stand, with regard to some of the other Parts of Speech; as, *the Book of Peter, I gave the Book to Peter*, &c.

Q. How many Cases are there?

A. Six; *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

Q. How many Numbers are there?

A. Two; *Singular and Plural.*

Q. Why is it called the Singular Number?

A. Because it only signifies one; as, *a Pen.*

Q. Why is it called the Plural?

A. Because it signifies any Number above one; as, *Pens.*

Q. How many Declensions are there?

A. Five; *First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth.*

The FIRST DECLENSION.

Q. **H**OW is the first Declension known?

A. By the Genitive and Dative Singular in *æ* Diphthong.

Q. How many Terminations hath it?

A. Four; *a, e, as, and es?* as,

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>penna,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>
	<i>a Pen.</i>		<i>* Pens.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pennarum,</i>
	<i>of a Pen.</i>		<i>of Pens.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pennis,</i>
	<i>to a Pen.</i>		<i>to Pens.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pennam,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pennas,</i>
	<i>a Pen.</i>		<i>Pens.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>penna,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>
	<i>O Pen.</i>		<i>O Pens.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pennæ;</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pennis,</i>
	<i>with a Pen.</i>		<i>with Pens.</i>

N. Penelope,

6 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
N. Penelope,	N. Æneas,	N. Anchises,
G. Penelopes,	G. Æneæ,	G. Anchisæ,
D. Penelope,	D. Æneæ,	D. Anchisæ,
A. Penelopen,	A. Æneam, or -an,	A. Anchisen,
V. Penelope,	V. Ænea,	V. Anchise,
A. Penelope.	A. Ænea.	A. Anchise.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

1. Of old *æ* in the Genitive was changed into *aï*; as, *aulaï* for *aulæ*, of a Hall; *lunaï* for *lunæ*, of the Moon; *pictaï* for *pictæ*, of any Thing painted.

2. The old Romans, after the Grecian Manner, made use of *as* in the Genitive Singular; as, *auras* for *auræ*, of the Wind; *vias* for *viæ*, of a Way: And, to this Day, the Compounds of *familia*, a Family, have oftner *as* than *æ* in the Genitive; as, *pater-familias*, the Master of a Family; *mater-familias*, the Mistress of it.

3. Greek Nouns in *as*, or *a*, have *an* in the Accusative; as, *Æneas*, -*an*; *Maia*, -*an*.

4. The following Substantives have their Dative Plural in *abus*, viz. *Filia*, a Daughter; *nata*, a Daughter; *mula*, a she Mule; *liberta*, a free'd Woman; *equa*, a Mare; *Dea*, a Goddess; *duæ*, two; *ambæ*, both.

The SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. HOW is the second Declension known?

A. By the Genitive Singular in *i*, and the Dative in *o*.

Q. How many Terminations hath it?

A. Seven; *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*; as,

Gener, a Son-in-law.	Regnum, a Kingdom.
Vir, a Man.	Synodos, a Synod.
Satur, full.	Symposion, a Banquet.
Dominus, a Lord.	

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. gener,	Nom. generi,
Gen. generi,	Gen. generorum,
Dat. genero,	Dat. generis,
Acc. generum,	Acc. generos,
Voc. gener,	Voc. generi,
Abl. genero :	Abl. generis.

Nom. dominus,

DECLENSION of NOUNS.

7

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dominus,	domini,	<i>Nom.</i> regnum,	regna,
<i>Gen.</i> domini,	dominorum,	<i>Gen.</i> regni,	regnorum,
<i>Dat.</i> domino,	dominis,	<i>Dat.</i> regno,	regnis,
<i>Acc.</i> dominum,	dominos,	<i>Acc.</i> regnum,	regna,
<i>Voc.</i> domine,	domini,	<i>Voc.</i> regnum,	regna,
<i>Abl.</i> domino :	dominis.	<i>Abl.</i> regno :	regnis.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

1. The Genitive ends in *i*, and is for the most Part of the same Number of Syllables with the Nominative ; as, *liber, libri*.

EXCEP. 1. Nouns ending in *ir* ; as, *vir*, &c. and these following Words, which have a Syllable more in the Genitive than in the Nominative ;

Puer, a Boy.	Mulciber, Vulcan.
Gener, a Son-in-law.	Socer, a Father-in-law.
Adulter, an Adulterer.	Vesper, the Evening.
Presbyter, an Elder.	Liber, the God of Wine.

EXCEP. 2. When the Genitive ends with a double *i*, one of them is often thrown away, for the Sake of the Verse ; as, *Antonius*, Gen. *Antoní* ; *tugurium*, Gen. *tugurí*, a Cottage ; instead of *Antonii*, *tugurii*.

EXCEP. 3. Greek Nouns in this Declension have sometimes the Genitive in *o* ; as, *Androgeos*, -*o* ; the Name of a Man.

2. The Dative and Ablative Singular end always in *o* ; as, *libro*.

3. The Accusative ends in *um* ; as, *ventum*.

EXCEP. Greek Nouns in *os* or *us*, have sometimes the Accusative in *on* ; as, *Delos* or *Delus*, Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*, the Name of an Island.

4. The Vocative is like the Nominative.—But Nouns in *us* make their Vocative in *e* ; as, *dominus*, *domine*.

EXCEP. *Populus*, a People, Voc. *popule* or *populus* ; *Deus*, God, Voc. *Deus*. *Filius*, a Son, has *fili* in the Vocative. Proper Names in *ius* also lose *us* in the Vocative ; as, *Georgius*, Voc. *Georgi*.—Observe, that the Poets sometimes keep *us* in the Vocative ; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*.

5. The Nominative Plural ends in *i* ; as, *domini*.—But Words of the Neuter Gender always have *a* ; as, *regna*.

6. The Genitive Plural ends in *orum* ; as, *dominorum*.—But Greek Nouns sometimes have *ón* ; as, *Georgica*, *Georgicón*, a Book of Husbandry.

NOTE, The rest of the Cases in this Declension admit of no Exceptions, but end always as in the *Paradigmata*.

The

8 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The THIRD DECLENSION.

2. **H**OW is the third Declension known?

A. By the Genitive Singular in *is*, and the Dative in *i*.

Q. How many Terminations hath it?

A. Seventy and one.

Q. How many final Letters hath it?

A. Eleven; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; as,

Diadema, *a Crown.*

Sedile, *a Seat.*

Sermo, *a Speech.*

Lac, *Milk.*

David, *a Man's Name.*

Animal, *a living Creature.*

Pecten, *a Comb.*

Pater, *a Father.*

Rupes, *a Rock.*

Caput, *the Head.*

Rex, *a King.*

N. B. There will be a Necessity of declining two or more Nouns of the third Declension, in every Page, that we may always keep that Declension in View, by way of Text, whilst we explain the Variety of Rules necessary for the understanding of the Formation of the Genitive in that Declension.—The Method we propose, is not to consider the Formation of the Genitive in this Declension, as in Mr. RUDDIMAN'S *Grammar*, by taking each of the final Letters as they stand above, *a, e, o, c, d, &c.* one after another; but to class them according to their different Genders; the Genitives of such as are Masculine in the first Place; then those that are Feminine; and lastly such as are Neuter.—But it is hoped the Reader will make no Objections, because among the Exceptions, he finds some Words of the Feminine Gender under Terminations which are generally Masculine; and Neuters or Masculines, perhaps, under Terminations which are Feminine. This it was impossible to prevent, as the Exceptions happen to be of all Genders, and we could only take Notice of the general Rule concerning the Termination. But there will be no Confusion, notwithstanding, as to the Genders of Words, because, at the End of the Declensions, there are particular Rules laid down for that Purpose; where we have not only the general Rules, but the Rules which determine the Gender of these Nouns which are excepted from every Termination.

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 9

The Masculine Terminations are *o, d, n, r, os*.—We shall begin in this Page with the Declension of Examples in *o, d, and n*; afterwards proceed with the rest as they stand in Order.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N. sermo,</i>	<i>sermones,</i>	<i>N. David,</i>	<i>N. pecten,</i>	<i>pectines,</i>
<i>G. sermonis,</i>	<i>sermonum,</i>	<i>G. Davidis,</i>	<i>G. pectinis,</i>	<i>pectinum,</i>
<i>D. sermoni,</i>	<i>sermonibus,</i>	<i>D. Davidi,</i>	<i>D. pectini,</i>	<i>pectinibus,</i>
<i>A. sermonem,</i>	<i>sermones,</i>	<i>A. Davidem,</i>	<i>A. pectinem,</i>	<i>pectines,</i>
<i>V. sermo,</i>	<i>sermones,</i>	<i>V. David,</i>	<i>V. pecten,</i>	<i>pectines,</i>
<i>A. sermone,</i>	<i>sermonibus.</i>	<i>A. Davide.</i>	<i>A. pectine,</i>	<i>pectinibus.</i>

REMARKS upon the Genitives of Masculines in O and D.

Nouns in O add *nis* to form the Genitive; as, *sermo, -nis*.

EXCEP. 1. Words in DO and GO, which change *o* into *inis*; as, *imago, imaginis*, an Image; *formido, formidinis*, Fear.

The following Nouns of the Masculine, and doubtful Gender, also change *o* into *inis*:

<i>Ordo, Order.</i>	<i>Cupido, Desire.</i>	<i>Turbo, a Top which Boys play with.</i>
<i>Margo, the Brink of a River.</i>	<i>Apollo, the God Apollo.</i>	<i>Nemo, No-body.</i>
<i>Cardo, a Hinge.</i>	<i>Homo, a Man.</i>	

NOTE, *Turbo*, the Name of a Gladiator, has *Turbonis*; and *unedo*, tho' it seems to be of the Feminine Gender, has *unedonis*, the Fruit of the Crab Tree.

EXCEP. 2. *Caro, carnis*, Flesh; *Anio, Anienis*, the Name of a River; *Nerio, Nerienis*, the Wife of the God Mars.

EXCEP. 3. Greek Nouns in O have the Genitive in *us*; as, *Dido, Didus*; yet sometimes it is declined *Dido, Didonis, &c.* after the Latin Manner.

The Nouns in D are very few. They form the Genitive by adding *is* after *d*; as, *David, Davidis*.

Of the Genitive of Masculines in N.

Nouns in N form the Genitive, by adding *is*; as, *Titan, -is*, the Brother of the Sun.

EXCEP. 1. Words of the Neuter Gender in MEN, have *inis*; as, *flumen, -inis*, a River; also *flamen*, whether it be Masculine, signifying a Priest, or Neuter, signifying a Blast of Wind; and, *pecten* a Comb, *tibicen* a Piper, *tubicen* a Trumpeter, all Masculine.

EXCEP. 2. Some Greek Words in ON have *ontis*; as, *Laomedon, Laomedontis*, a King of Troy.

10 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> anser,	anserēs,	<i>N.</i> sacerdos,	sacerdotes,
<i>G.</i> anseris,	anserum,	<i>G.</i> sacerdotis,	sacerdotum,
<i>D.</i> anseri,	anseribus,	<i>D.</i> sacerdoti,	sacerdotibus,
<i>A.</i> anserem,	anserēs,	<i>A.</i> sacerdotem,	sacerdotes,
<i>V.</i> anser,	anserēs,	<i>V.</i> sacerdos,	sacerdotes,
<i>A.</i> anserē,	anseribus.	<i>A.</i> sacerdotē,	sacerdotibus.

Of the Genitive of Masculines in R.

Nouns in R add *is* to form the Genitive; as, *anser*, *anseris*, a Goose.

EXCEP. 1. <i>Far</i> , <i>farris</i> , all Kinds of Corn.	<i>October</i> , -bris, <i>October</i> .
<i>Lar</i> , <i>Lartis</i> , a Man's Name.	<i>November</i> , -bris, <i>November</i> .
<i>Hepar</i> , -tis, or -tos, the Liver.	<i>Acer</i> , <i>acris</i> , sharp.
<i>Imber</i> , <i>imbris</i> , a Shower.	<i>Alacer</i> , <i>alacris</i> , cheerful.
<i>September</i> , -bris, <i>September</i> .	<i>Volucer</i> , <i>volucris</i> , swift.
<i>Lar</i> , a Household God, has <i>Laris</i> .	

EXCEP. 2. Latin Nouns in TER lose *e* in the Genitive; as, *uter*, *utris*, a Bottle; *accipiter*, *accipitris*, a Hawk.——Observe, however, that Greek Nouns in *ter* keep *e* in the Genitive; as, *crater*, *crateris*, a Cup; *Character*, *Characteris*, a Character; and *later*, a Tile, tho' a Latin Word, has *lateris* in the Genitive.——NOTE, Two Greek Words, *pater* a Father, and *mater* a Mother, have *tris* in the Genitive.

EXCEP. 3. <i>Cor</i> , <i>cordis</i> , the Heart.	<i>Robur</i> , <i>robotis</i> , hard Oak.
<i>Jecur</i> , <i>jecoris</i> , the Liver.	<i>Iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , a Journey.
<i>Ebur</i> , <i>eboris</i> , Ivory.	<i>Jupiter</i> , <i>Jovis</i> , <i>Jupiter</i> .
<i>Femur</i> , <i>femoris</i> , the Thigh.	

Of the Genitive of Masculines in OS.

Nouns in OS form the Genitive, by putting *ti* between the *o* and the *s*; as, *sacerdos*, *sacerdotis*, a Priest.

EXCEP. <i>Glos</i> , <i>gloris</i> , the Husband's Sister.	<i>Os</i> , <i>offis</i> , a Bone.
<i>Mos</i> , <i>moris</i> , Use or Custom.	<i>Custos</i> , <i>custodis</i> , a Keeper.
<i>Flos</i> , <i>floris</i> , a Flower.	<i>Bos</i> , <i>bovis</i> , an Ox.
<i>Ros</i> , <i>roris</i> , Dew	<i>Thos</i> , <i>Thois</i> , a Kind of Wolf.
<i>Os</i> , <i>oris</i> , the Mouth.	<i>Minos</i> , -ois, a King of Crete.
<i>Honos</i> , <i>honoris</i> , Honour.	<i>Tros</i> , <i>Trois</i> , a Trojan.
<i>Labos</i> , <i>laboris</i> , Labour.	<i>Heros</i> , <i>herois</i> , a Hero.

Words

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 11

Words of the Feminine Gender.

Q. What are the Terminations of Words in the Feminine Gender?

A. The following; *s, x, as, es, is, ys.*

Q. Has not the Termination *s* very often a Consonant before it?

A. Yes.

Q. What are these Consonants which come before *s* in Nouns of the third Declension?

A. *Bs, ps, ns, rs, ls, and ms.*

Q. Give me Examples of each of these Terminations?

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N. trabs,</i>	<i>trabes,</i>	<i>N. feps,</i>	<i>sepes,</i>
<i>G. trabis,</i>	<i>trabium,</i>	<i>G. sepis,</i>	<i>sepium,</i>
<i>D. trabi,</i>	<i>trabibus,</i>	<i>D. sepi,</i>	<i>sepibus,</i>
<i>A. trabem,</i>	<i>trabes,</i>	<i>A. sepem,</i>	<i>sepes,</i>
<i>V. trabs,</i>	<i>trabes,</i>	<i>V. feps,</i>	<i>sepes,</i>
<i>A. trabe,</i>	<i>trabibus.</i>	<i>A. sepe,</i>	<i>sepibus.</i>

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N. gens,</i>	<i>gentes,</i>	<i>N. pars,</i>	<i>partes,</i>
<i>G. gentis,</i>	<i>gentium,</i>	<i>G. partis,</i>	<i>partium,</i>
<i>D. genti,</i>	<i>gentibus,</i>	<i>D. parti,</i>	<i>partibus,</i>
<i>A. gentem,</i>	<i>gentes,</i>	<i>A. partem,</i>	<i>partes,</i>
<i>V. gens,</i>	<i>gentes,</i>	<i>V. pars,</i>	<i>partes,</i>
<i>A. gente,</i>	<i>gentibus.</i>	<i>A. parte,</i>	<i>partibus.</i>

NOTE, There is only one Word in *ls, puls, pultis*, Pottage; and another in *ms, hiems, hiemis*, Winter.

Of the Formation of the Genitive of Words in BS and PS.

Nouns in BS and PS form the Genitive by putting *i* between *bs* and *ps*; as, *trabs, trabis*, a Beam; *seps, sepis*, a Hedge.

EXCEP. 1. Polysyllables in *EPS*, which change *e* into *i*; as, *princeps, principis*, a Prince; *adeps, adipis*, Fat; *cæleks*, an unmarried Man or Woman, has also *cælibis*; and *auceps, aucupis*, a Fowler, has *aucupis*.

EXCEP. 2. The Compounds of *caput* ending in *ceps*, have *cipitis*; as, *præceps, præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps, bicipitis*, two-headed.

EXCEP. 3. *Cinyps, Cinyphis*, the Name of a River; and *gryps, gryphis*, a Griffin.

Of the Genitives of Words in NS and RS.

Nouns in NS and RS throw away *s* and add *tis* to form the Genitive; as, *gens, gentis*, a Nation; *pars, partis*, a Part.

EXCEP. *Glans, -dis, an Acorn.*

Juglans, -dis, a Walnut.

Nefrens, -dis, a Grice or Pig.

Lens, -dis, a Nit.

Frons, -dis, the Leaf of a Tree

Libripens, -dis, an Officer that weighs their Pay to Soldiers

Iens, euntis, going.

Rediens, -euntis, returning.

Quiens, -euntis, being able.

Teryns, -ynthis, a City in Greece.

Concors, -cordis, agreeing.

Misericors, -cordis, merciful.

NOTE, We say *lens, lentis*, a Kind of Pulse; and *frons, frontis*, the Forehead.

Give

12 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Give me Examples of Words in X and AS in the third Declension.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N. nutrix,</i>	<i>nutrices,</i>	<i>N. voluptas,</i>	<i>voluptates,</i>
<i>G. nutricis,</i>	<i>nutricum,</i>	<i>G. voluptatis,</i>	<i>voluptatum,</i>
<i>D. nutrici,</i>	<i>nutricibus,</i>	<i>D. voluptati,</i>	<i>voluptatibus,</i>
<i>A. nutricem,</i>	<i>nutrices,</i>	<i>A. voluptatem,</i>	<i>voluptates,</i>
<i>V. nutrix,</i>	<i>nutrices,</i>	<i>V. voluptas,</i>	<i>voluptates,</i>
<i>A. nutrice,</i>	<i>nutricibus.</i>	<i>A. voluptate,</i>	<i>voluptatibus.</i>

The Formation of the Genitive of Words in X.

Nouns in X form the Genitive by changing *x* into *cis*; as, *nutrix, nutricis*, Nurse.

EXCEP. 1. <i>Lex, legis, a Law.</i>	<i>Hylax, -actis, the Name of Dog.</i>
<i>Rex, regis, a King.</i>	<i>Bibrax, Bibractis, the Name of a Town.</i>
<i>GreX, gregis, a Flock,</i>	<i>Nix, nivis, Snow.</i>
<i>Strix, strigis, a screech Owl.</i>	<i>Nox, noctis, Night.</i>
<i>Phryx, Phrygis, a Phrygian.</i>	<i>Senex, senis, an old Man.</i>
<i>Larynx, -yngis, the Top of the Windpipe.</i>	<i>Conjux, -jugis, } a Husband, or Wife.</i>
<i>Onyx, Onychis, the Name of a precious Stone.</i>	<i>Supellex, supellectilis, Household Furniture.</i>

EXCEP. 2. Polyfyllables in EX, that is, Words in *ex* which have more Syllables than one, change *e* into *i* in the Genitive; as, *pollex pollicis*, the Thumb; *remex, remigis*, a Rower.—But observe, that the following Polyfyllables do, notwithstanding, keep *e*:

<i>Myrmex, a Pismire.</i>	<i>Lelex, the Name of a Man.</i>
<i>Vervex, a Wedder Sheep.</i>	Also the Compounds of <i>feco</i> : as,
<i>Halex, a Herring.</i>	<i>Fænifex, a Cutter of Hay.</i>
<i>Aquilex, a Well-maker.</i>	<i>Refex, a Vine Branch cut off.</i>

Of the Genitive of Words in AS.

Nouns in AS have *atis* long in the Genitive; as, *voluptas, -atis*, Pleasure.

EXCEP. 1. *Mas, maris*, a Male; as, *assis*, a Piece of Money; *vas, vasis*, neut. a Vessel; *vas, vadis*, masc. a Cautioner.

EXCEP. 2. Greek Nouns in AS, of the Masculine Gender, have *antis*; as, *gigas, gigantis*, a Giant.

EXCEP. 3. Greek Nouns in AS, of the Feminine Gender, have *adis*; as, *lampas, lampadis*, a Lamp.

EXCEP. 4. Greek Nouns in AS, of the Neuter Gender, have *atis* short in the Genitive; as, *artocreas, artocreatis*, a Pye.

Give

DECLENSION of NOUNS.

13

Give me an Example of a Word in ES in the third Declension.

<i>Sing,</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> sedes,	<i>Nom.</i> sedes,
<i>Gen.</i> sedis,	<i>Gen.</i> sedium,
<i>Dat.</i> sedi,	<i>Dat.</i> sedibus,
<i>Acc.</i> sedem,	<i>Acc.</i> sedes,
<i>Voc.</i> sedes,	<i>Voc.</i> sedes,
<i>Abl.</i> sede,	<i>Abl.</i> sedibus.

Of the Genitive of Words in ES.

Nouns in ES form the Genitive by changing *es* into *is*; as, *sedes*, *sedis*, a Seat.

EXCEP. 1. Three Latin Nouns which have *etis* long; *mansues*, *-etis*, gentle; *locuples*, *-etis*, rich; *quies*, *-etis*, Rest. Also many Greek Nouns; as, *Cres*, *Cretis*, a Cretan; *magnes*, *-etis*, a Loadstone; *tapes*, *-etis*, Tapestry.

NOTE, *Requies*, a Compound of *quies*, has *requietis* or *requiei*. And some Greek Nouns have both *etis* and *is* in the Genitive; as, *Chremes*, *Chremetis*, or *Chremis*; *Dares*, *Daretis*, or *Daris*; *Thales*, *Thaletis*, or *Thalis*: Names of Men.

EXCEP. 2. <i>Teges</i> , a Coverlet.	<i>Indiges</i> , a God made of a Man.
<i>Seges</i> , growing Corn.	<i>Aries</i> , a Ram.
<i>Interpres</i> , an Interpreter.	<i>Perpes</i> , perpetual.
<i>Præpes</i> , swift winged.	<i>Teres</i> , round and long.
<i>Paries</i> , a Wall.	<i>Hebes</i> , dull.
<i>Abies</i> , a Fir Tree.	

All these have *etis* short in the Genitive.

EXCEP. 3. All other Nouns in *es*, of whatever Gender they be, change *es* into *itis* short, in the Genitive; as,

<i>Eques</i> , a Horseman.	<i>Antistes</i> , a Prelate.	<i>Sospes</i> , safe.
<i>Palmes</i> , a Vine Branch.	<i>Ales</i> , swift.	And all the other Adjec-
<i>Miles</i> , a Soldier.	<i>Dives</i> , rich.	tives in <i>es</i> .

Yet we say *verres*, *verris*, a Boar-pig; *vates*, *vatis*, a Prophet or Poet.

EXCEP. 4. The Compounds of *sedeo* which take *idis*; as,

<i>Præses</i> , a President.	<i>Quadrupes</i> , <i>-pedis</i> , fourfooted.
<i>Obses</i> , a Hostage.	<i>Ceres</i> , <i>Ceremis</i> , a Goddess.
Also, <i>Pes</i> , <i>pedis</i> , a Foot.	<i>Bes</i> , <i>beßis</i> , two Thirds of a Pound,
<i>Sonipes</i> , <i>-pedis</i> , a Courser.	or eight Ounces.

Give

14 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Give me Examples of Words in IS and YS.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>
N.	ovis,	oves,	N.	Capys,
G.	ovis,	ovium,	G.	Capyis, or Capyos,
D.	ovi,	ovibus,	D.	Capyi,
A.	ovem,	oves,	A.	Capya,
V.	ovis,	oves,	V.	Capy.
A.	ove,	ovibus.		

Formation of the Genitive of Words in IS.

Nouns in IS have the Genitive like the Nominative; as, *ovis*, Gen. *ovis*, a Sheep.

EXCEP. 1. <i>Cassis</i> , -idis, a Helmet.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inis, Blood.
<i>Lapis</i> , -idis, a Stone.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -eris, Dust.
<i>Capis</i> , -idis, a Kind of Pot.	<i>Cinis</i> , -eris, Ashes.
<i>Promulsis</i> , -idis, a Drink mixt with new Wine.	<i>Vomis</i> , -eris, a Plough Share.
<i>Cuspis</i> , -idis, the Point of a Spear.	<i>Dis</i> , -itis, rich.
<i>Lis</i> , -litis, Strife.	<i>Glis</i> , -iris, a Rat.
<i>Quiris</i> , -itis, a Roman.	<i>Semis</i> , -iflis, the Half of any Thing.
<i>Samnis</i> , -itis, a Samnite.	

EXCEP. 2. These Greek Nouns, which form their Genitive very differently.

<i>Herefis</i> , -eos, a Heresy.	<i>Eleusis</i> , -inis, a City.
<i>Metropolis</i> , -eos, or -ios, a capital City.	<i>Salamis</i> , -inis, a City.
<i>Jaspis</i> , -idis, or -idos, a Jasper Stone.	<i>Simois</i> , -entis, a River.
<i>Paris</i> , -idis, a Man's Name.	<i>Pyrois</i> , -entis, one of the Sun's Horses.
<i>Themis</i> , -idis, the Goddess of Justice.	<i>Opoeis</i> , -entis, } the Name of a City.
<i>Crenis</i> , -idis, the Name of an Island.	or <i>Opus</i> , -untis, }
<i>Psophis</i> , -idis, the Name of a City.	<i>Charis</i> , -itis, one of the Graces.

Of the Genitive of Words in YS.

Greek Nouns in YS form the Genitive in *yis* or *yos*; as, *Capys*, a Man's Name.

EXCEP. <i>Chlamys</i> , -ydis, or ydos, a Soldier's Cloak.
<i>Pelamys</i> , -ydis, or ydos, a Kind of Fish.
<i>Trachys</i> , -ynis, or ynos, the Name of a City.
<i>Phorcys</i> , -ynis, or ynos, the Father of Medusa.

To these Words in YS we shall add *as*, *aris*, Brass or Money; *laus*, *laudis*, Praise, and *fraus*, *fraudis*, Fraud.—Also Nouns in *eus*, which have *eos*; as, *Tereus*, *Tereos*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; the Names of Men.—But observe, that Nouns in *eus* are for the most Part in the second Declension; as, *Orpheus*, *Orphei*, in three Syllables.

Words

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 15

Words of the Neuter Gender.

Q. What are the Terminations of Words in the Neuter Gender?

A. The following; *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, us*.—We don't rank *ar* and *ur* among the Terminations of the Neuter Gender, as the Formation of their Genitives agrees with the general Rule given before about Nouns in *r*.

Q. Give me Examples of Nouns in the Neuter Gender ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t*.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. diadema,	diademata,	N. fedile,	fedilia,
G. diadematis,	diadematum,	G. fedilis,	fedilium,
D. diademati,	diadematus,	D. fedili,	fedilibus,
A. diadema,	diademata,	A. fedile,	fedilia,
V. diadema,	diademata,	V. fedile,	fedilia,
A. diademate,	diematibus.	A. fedili,	fedilibus.

Gummi, indeclinable; *Misy*, Gen. *yos*.

Sing.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. lac,	N. animal,	animalia,	N. caput,	capita,
G. lactis,	G. animalis,	animalium,	G. capitis,	capitum,
D. lacti,	D. animal,	animalibus,	D. capiti,	capitibus,
A. lac,	A. animal,	animalia,	A. caput,	capita,
V. lac,	V. animal,	animalia,	V. caput,	capita,
A. lacte.	A. animal,	animalibus.	A. capite,	capitibus.

Of the Genitive of Words in A, E, I, Y, C, L, T.

1. Words ending in A have *atis* short in the Genitive; as, *diadema*, *-atis*, Crown.

2. Words in E change *e* into *is*; as, *fedile*, *fedilis*, a Seat.

3. Nouns in I, of the third Declension, are for the most Part indeclinable; *gummi*, Gum.—Some Words compounded of *meli* or *mel* have *itis*; as, *romeli*, *-itis*, Mead, or Water and Honey boiled together.

4. Greek Nouns in Y make *yos*; as, *misy*, *misyos*, Vitriol.

5. Nouns ending in C and L form the Genitive by adding *is*; as, *balet*, *ba-*, a Kind of Pickle; *exul*, *exulis*, a banished Man.

EXCEP. Lac, lactis, Milk.

Mel, mellis, Honey.

Fel, fellis, Gall.

6. There is only one Word of the Neuter Gender ending in T, *caput*, which has *capitis*.—*Sinciput*, the Forehead, and *occiput*, the Hindhead, which are the Compounds of *caput*, have *capitis*.

Give

16 *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

Give me an Example of a Noun ending in US.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	pectus,	<i>Nom.</i>	pectora,
<i>Gen.</i>	pectoris,	<i>Gen.</i>	pectorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	pectori,	<i>Dat.</i>	pectoribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	pectus,	<i>Acc.</i>	pectora,
<i>Voc.</i>	pectus,	<i>Voc.</i>	pectora,
<i>Abl.</i>	pectore,	<i>Abl.</i>	pectoribus.

Formation of the Genitive of Words in US.

Nouns in US have *oris* short in the Genitive ; as, *pectus*, -*oris*, the Breast.

EXCEP. 1. Comparatives which have *oris* long ; as, *melius*, -*oris*, better.

EXCEP. 2. The following Nouns have *eris* short :

Hulcus, a Boil.	Opus, a Work,	Viscus, the Bowels:
Olus, all Kinds of Herbs for Meat.	Fœdus, a Covenant.	Sidus, a Star.
Vellus, a Fleece of Wool.	Scelus, a Crime.	Latus, the Side.
Venus, the Goddess of Love.	Pondus, a Weight.	Funus, a Burial.
Genus, Kind or Kindred.	Vulnus, a Wound.	Vetus, old.
	Munus, an Office or Gift.	Rudus, Rubbish.
	Onus, a Load or Burden.	Acus, Chaff.

EXCEP. 3. Tellus, -*uris*, the Earth.

Crus, -*uris*, the Leg.

Jus, *juris*, Law.

Mus, *muris*, a Mouse.

Pus, -*uris*, corrupt Matter:

Rus, *ruris*, the Country.

Ligus, -*uris*, (short) a Ligurian.

Grus, *gruis*, a Crane.

Sus, *suis*, a Swine or Sow.

The Compounds of *pus* and
pus have *odis*;

Tripus, -*odis*, a three-footed Pedestal.

Oedipus, -*odis*, a Man's Name.

EXCEP. 4. Greek Names of Towns have *untis* ; as, Trapezus, -*untis*.

EXCEP. 5. These Nouns have *udis* long ; *subscus*, a Dove-tail ; *incus*, an Anvil ; *palus*, a Pool or Morass.

EXCEP. 6. All the rest of the Nouns in US of the feminine Gender have *utis* long ; as,

Virtus, Virtue or Valour.

Salus, Health or Safety.

Servitus, Bondage.

Juventus, Youth.

Senectus, old Age.

Intercus, -*utis*, (short) an Hydropsy.

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 17

Q. Can the rest of the Cases of Words in the third Declension be accounted for in the same Way with the Genitive, by having a particular Regard to the Terminations?

A. No; they are more general, and the Rules concerning them are applicable to all Sorts of Nouns, of whatever Termination, with fewer Exceptions.

Q. In what Way do you propose to account for them?

A. By giving the general Rule for every Case, and then a List of such Words as are excepted.

Of the DATIVE Case.

Q. What is the general Rule for the Dative Singular?

A. The Dative of the third Declension ends in *i*; as, *sermo, sermoni*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions?

A. None worth mentioning.

Of the ACCUSATIVE Case.

Q. What is the general Rule for the Accusative Case?

A. The Accusative ends in *em*; as, *sermo, sermonem*.

Q. What are the Exceptions?

A. The following:

1. *Ravis, -im, Hoarseness.*

Amuffis, -im, a Mason's Rule.

Vis, vim, Strength.

Cucumis, -im, a Cucumber.

Tussis, -im, the Cough.

Sinapis, -im, Mustard.

Cannabis, -im, Hemp.

Gummi, -im, Gum.

Buris, -im, a Beam of a Plough.

Mephitis, -im, a Damp, or strong Smell.

Sitis, -im, Thirst.

Bilbilis, -im, a Lake in Egypt.

Syrtis, -im, quick Sands in Libya.

Tiberis, -im, a River in Italy.

Bætis, -im, a River in Spain.

Anubis, -im, } Egyptian Gods.

Apis, -im, }

Observe that the Nouns in this Column are often declined by *in*, after the Greek Manner; as, *Bilbilin, &c.*

2. Some have *em* and *im*; of which these following have oftner *im* than *em*:

Puppis, the Stern of a Ship.

Restis, a Rope.

Turtis, a Tower.

Securis, an Ax.

These have oftner *em* than *im*:

Febris, a Fever.

Aqualis, an Ewer.

Navis, a Ship.

Pelvis, a Basin.

Clavis, a Key.

Cutis, the Skin.

Strigilis, a Horse Comb.

Sementis, Seed, or sowing of Seed.

Lens, Lentils.

C

Of

18 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of the ACCUSATIVE of Greek Nouns.

When Greek Nouns grow in the Genitive, that is, when the Genitive has more Syllables than the Nominative, and ends in IS or OS impure, that is, has a Consonant before *is* or *os*, the Accusative in that Case often ends in *a*; as, *lampas*, Gen. *lampadis* or *lampados*, has *lampadem* or *lampada* in the Accusative. — But these three Nouns, tho' they have *is* in the Genitive, with a Vowel before it, have either *em* or *a*; as, *Tros*, -ois, Acc. *Troem* or *Troa*, a Trojan; *Minos*, -ois, Acc. *Minoem* or -*oa*, a King of Crete; *heros*, -ois, Acc. *heroem* or -*oa*, a Hero; — *Pan*, *æther*, and *delphin*, only take *a*; as, *Pana*, &c.

When a Greek Noun ends in EUS, the Accusative ends in *a*; as, *Theseus*, *Thesea*.

Greek Nouns of the Masculine Gender, if the Genitive ends in *is* or *os* impure, have the Accusative in *im* or *in*, *ym* or *yn*. But then, such Accusatives have never more Syllables than the Nominative; as, *Paris*, Gen. *Paridis* or *Paridos*, Acc. *Parim* or *Parin*; *Daphnis*, -*idis* or -*idos*, Acc. *Daphnim* or *Daphnin*. — Such Words have sometimes *idem* in the Accusative, but never *ida*; thus, tho' seldom, we read *Paridem*, never *Parida*.

Greek Nouns in IS or YS, of the Feminine Gender, which are impure in the Genitive, have often *idem* or *ida*, and seldom *im* or *in*, *ym* or *yn*; as, *Elis*, -*idis* or -*idos*, Acc. *Elidem* or *Elida*, sometimes *Elin*; *Aulis*, -*idis*, or -*idos*, Acc. *Aulidem*, *Aulida*, and *Aulin*; *chlamys*, Acc. *chlamydem* or *chlamyda*, never *chlamyn*.

Greek Nouns in IS or YS, as well Masculine as Feminine, having the Genitive in *os* pure, that is, with a Vowel before it, form the Accusative by changing *s* of the the Nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphosis*, -*eos* or -*ios*, Acc. *metamorphosim*, or -*in*; *Halys*, -*yos* or *yis*, Acc. *Halym* or -*yn*.

Of the ABLATIVE Singular.

Q. What is the general Rule for forming the Ablative Singular?

A. The Ablative of the third Declension ends in *e*; as, *sermo*, *sermone*.

EXCEP. I. Nouns ending in E, and Words of the Neuter Gender in AL and AR, which take *i* in the Ablative; as, *ovile*, Abl. *ovili*, a Sheep-fold; *cervical*, Abl. *cervicali*, a Pillow; *laquear*, Abl. -*ari*, a ceiled Roof. — Observe, that proper Names ending in E, keep *e*; as, *Præneste*, Abl. *Præneste*, the Name of a Town. — These few Nouns, also, in AL and AR, take *e*; *jubar*, a Sun-beam; *Sal*, Salt; *far*, Corn; *Par*, a Pair

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 19

Pair or Couple; *nectar*, Drink of the Gods; and *hepar* the Liver.—The Poets also, sometimes use *e* for *i*; as, *laqueare*, *mare*, for *laqueari*, *mari*.

EXCEP. 2. Nouns in IS, which have the Accusative in *im* or *in* only, have *i* in the Ablative; as, *vis*, Acc. *vim*, Abl. *vi*, Strength; *sitis*, Acc. *sitim*, Abl. *siti*, Thirst.—Yet some of these have sometimes *e* in the Ablative; as, *cannabis*, Hemp; *Bætis*, *Tigris*, Names of Rivers.

EXCEP. 3. Nouns in YS have the Ablative in *ye*, and sometimes in *y*, when the Accusative ends in *ym* or *yn*; as, *Atys*, Abl. *Atye* or *Aty*.

EXCEP. 4. Nouns that have *em* or *im* in the Accusative, have the Ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, Acc. *turrem* or *-im*, Abl. *turre* or *turri*, a Tower.—*Reslis* and *cutis*, however, tho' they have *em* or *im* in the Accusative, have only *e* in the Ablative.

EXCEP. 5. These following Nouns have *e* or *i* in the Ablative, tho' the Accusative ends in *em*:

Finis, the End.

Pugil, a Champion.

Supellex, Furniture.

Mugil, a Mullet-fish.

Vectis, a Bar or Leaver.

Rus, the Country, and *Occiput*, the Noddle, have also *e* or *i* in the Ablative; to which add, Names of Towns, when the Question is made by *ubi* (where); as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*.

EXCEP. 6. The following Words have *e* or *i* in the Ablative, but much rather chuse *e*; as,

Civis, (*e*, seldom *i*) a Citizen.

Classis, a Fleet.

Sors, a Lot.

Anguis, a Serpent.

Imber, a Shower.

Avis, a Bird.

Unguis, a Nail.

Postis, a Post.

Fustis, a Staff.

Amnis, a River.

Observe, *canalis* has *canali*.

Of the NOMINATIVE Plural.

Q. How do Words of the Masculine and Feminine Gender form the Nominative Plural?

A. They have always *es*; as, *sermo*, *sermone*s; *caro*, *carnes*.

Q. How do Words in the Neuter Gender form the Nominative Plural?

A. By these two Rules:—1. If the Ablative Singular ended in *i*, the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural have *ia*;

20 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

ia ; as, *sedile*, Abl. *sedili*, Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural, *sedilia*.—2. But if the Ablative Singular ended in *e*, the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural end in *a*, not *ia* ; as, *diadema*, Abl. *diademate*, Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural, *diademata*.

Of the GENITIVE Plural.

Q. How is the Genitive Plural formed ?

A. By these two Rules: 1. When the Ablative Singular has *i*, the Genitive Plural has *ium* ; as, *alveare*, Abl. *alveari*, Gen. Plur. *alvearium*. 2. When the Ablative Singular has *e*, the Genitive Plural has *um* ; as, *leo*, Abl. *leone*, Gen. Plur. *leonum*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions from the first of these Rules ?

A. Yes ; but they are all Adjectives, and have therefore nothing to do in this Place ; but are afterwards accounted for by the Rules laid down for forming the Cases of Adjective Nouns.

Q. What are the Exceptions from the second Rule ?

A. EXCEP. 1. Latin Nouns in AS, which have *ium* in the Genitive Plural ; as, *mas*, *marium*, a Male ; *as*, *assium*, twelve Ounces ; *vas*, *vadium*, a Surety.—But Poly syllables in *as* have rather *um* ; as, *voluptas*, *voluptatum*.

EXCEP. 2. Nouns in ES or IS, when they have no more Syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative, take *ium* in the Genitive Plural ; as, *hostis*, *hostium*, an Enemy ; *ædes*, *ædium*, a Temple or House.—Yet except from this Number, *vates*, *vatum*, *panis*, *panum*, *canis*, *canum*.

EXCEP. 3. Nouns in NS have *ium* ; as, *cliens*, *clientium*, a Vassal.—But *parens* has rather *parentum* than *parentium*.

EXCEP. 4. These following Nouns also take *ium*, tho' they had *e* in the Ablative Singular :

Samnis, a Samnite.	Mus, a Mouse.
Linter, a little Boat.	Faux, a Jaw.
Caro, Flesh.	Uter, a Bottle.
Dos, a Dowry.	Quiris, a Roman.
Os, ossis, a Bone.	Lar, a Household God, a House.
Glis, a Rat.	Lis, Strife.
Nix, Snow.	Cos, a Whetstone or Hone.
Nox, Night.	Cor, the Heart.
Cohors, a Company.	

EXCEP. 5. The Compounds of *uncia* and *as* take *ium* ; as also Monosyllables ending with two Consonants ; as, *septunx*, *septuncium*, seven Ounces ; *sextans*, *sextantium*, two Ounces ; *urbs*, *urbium*, a Town ; *stirps*, *stirpium*, the Trunk of a Tree.

EXCEP. 6. *Bos*, an Ox or Cow, has *bovm*.

Greek

DECLENSION of NOUNS. 21

Greek Nouns for the most Part have the Genitive Plural in *um*; as, *Macedo*, *Macedonum*, a Macedonian.—Except Nouns, whose Nominative ends in *a* or *sis*, which have sometimes *on* in the Genitive Plural; as, *epigramma*, *epigrammatum* or *-on*, an Epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium* or *-eon*, a Change.

Of the Genitive Plural of such Nouns as want the Singular.

When any Noun wants the Singular, we must suppose it to have that Number, and then form the Plural precisely in the same Manner as in the Case of a real Singular; as, *mænia*, *mænum*, Walls; *ilia*, *ilium*, Entrails; *fores*, *forium*, a Gate; because the Singular Number would have been *mæne*, *ile*, *foris*.—Again we say, *maiores*, *majorum*, Ancestors; *cælitæ*, *cælitum*, Saints departed; *lemures*, *lemurum*, Hobgoblins; because the Singular would have been, *major*, *cæles*, *lemur*.

EXCEP. Names of Feasts, which passing from one Declension to another, have often *orum* in the Genitive Plural; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturnaliūm*, and *Saturnaliorum*, the Feasts of Saturn.—NOTE, The Genitive Plural in *ium*, is by the Poets sometimes contracted into *um*; as, *nocentum*, *cædum*, for *nocentium*, *cædium*.

Of the DATIVE Plural.

Q. How does the Dative Plural end?

A. The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *ibus*; as, *sermo*, *sermonibus*.

EXCEP. 1. *Bos*, which has *bobus*, and *bubus*, not *bovibus*.

EXCEP. 2. Greek Words in *a*, which have *tis* oftener than *tibus*; as, *epigramma*, Dat. Plur. *epigrammatis*, rather than *epigrammatibus*.

EXCEP. 3. Some Greek Nouns, among the Poets, have the Dative Plural in *sin*; as, *Troasin*, *Charisin*, instead of *Troadibus*, *Charitibus*.

Of the ACCUSATIVE Plural.

Q. How does the Accusative Plural end?

A. The Accusative Plural ends in *es*; as, *sermo*, *sermones*.

EXCEP. 1. Nouns which had *ium* in the Genitive Plural, have the Accusative in *eis* or *is*; as, *pars*, *partium*, Acc. *partes*, *eis* or *is*.

EXCEP. 2. When the Accusative Singular ends in *a*, the Accusative Plural ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, Acc. Sing. *lampadem* or *lampada*; Acc. Plur. *lampades* or *lampadas*.

The

22 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. **H**OW is the fourth Declension known?

A. By the Genitive Singular in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

Q. How many Terminations hath it?

A. Two; *us* and *u*; as, *fructus*, Fruit; *cornu*, a Horn.

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
N.	fructus,	fructus,	N.	cornu,	cornua,
G.	fructus,	fructuum,	G.	cornu,	cornuum,
D.	fructui,	fructibus.	D.	cornu,	cornibus,
A.	fructum,	fructus,	A.	cornu,	cornua,
V.	fructus,	fructus,	V.	cornu,	cornua,
A.	fructu,	fructibus.	A.	cornu,	cornibus.

Domus, a House, and *JESUS*, the Name of our Saviour, are mostly in this Declension, and are thus declined:

	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
N.	JESUS,	N. domus,	domus,
G.	JESU,	G. domus, or -mi,	domorum, or -muum.
D.	JESU,	D. domui, or -mo,	domibus,
A.	JESUM,	A. domum.	domus, or -os,
V.	JESU,	V. domus,	domus,
A.	JESU.	A. domo,	domibus.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

The Genitive of old ended in *uis*; as, *anus*, *anuis*; an old Wife.

The Dative ends sometimes in *u*; as, *metu*, for *metui*, Fear.

The Accusative ends always in *um*, and the Ablative always in *u*; as, *metum*, *metu*.

The Nominative and Vocative Plural end always in *us*; as, *fructus*.

The Genitive ends in *uum*; as, *fructuum*.

The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *ibus*; as, *fructibus*.

EXCEP. These Nouns, which have the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ubus*; *partus*, a Birth; *specus*, a Den; *artus*, a Joint; *acus*, a Needle; *lacus*, a Lake; *arcus*, a Bow; *tribus*, a Tribe.

NOTE I. *Portus*, a Harbour; *genu*, the Knee; *veru*, a Spit; have *ibus* and *ubus*.

2. The Genitive *domi* is only used, when we would say, at Home.

3. *JESUS* has *um* in the Accusative, and *u* thro' all the other Cases.

The

DECLENSION of NOUNS 23

The FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. HOW is the fifth Declension known?

A. By the Genitive and Dative Singular in *ei*.

Q. How many Terminations hath it?

A. One, namely *es*; as, *res*, a Thing.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. <i>res</i> ,	Nom. <i>res</i> ,
Gen. <i>rei</i> ,	Gen. <i>rerum</i> ,
Dat. <i>rei</i> ,	Dat. <i>rebus</i> ,
Acc. <i>rem</i> ,	Acc. <i>res</i> ,
Voc. <i>res</i> ,	Voc. <i>res</i> ,
Abl. <i>re</i> ,	Abl. <i>rebus</i> .

REMARKS upon the CASES.

The Genitive and Dative Singular end in *ei*; as, *rei*.

EXCEP. Words in which *i* is sometimes thrown away by the Poets; as, *fide* for *fidei*.—But this happens very seldom in the Dative.

The Accusative ends always in *em*; the Ablative in *e*; the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, in *es*; the Genitive in *erum*; and the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ebus*.

NOTE 1. The Nouns of the fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, except *dies*, a Day, and *meridies*, Mid-day.

NOTE 2. All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*; except *fides*, Faith; *spes*, Hope; *res*, a Thing.

NOTE 3. All Nouns ending in *ies* are of the fifth Declension; except *abies*, a Fir tree; *aries*, a Ram; *paries*, a Wall, and *quies*, Rest, which are of the third.

NOTE 4. Nouns of this Declension, for the most Part, want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative Plural.—Many of them want the Plural altogether.

Of

24 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS.

N. B. *As there are a great many Examples, among the irregular Nouns, which are seldom or never met with in any Author, we propose to pass these over, and take Notice only of such as are most useful, and most frequently occur.*

Q. **W**HAT is the Division of Irregular Nouns?

A. They are divided into *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Abundant*.

Q. What are the *Variable* Nouns?

A. We call these *Variable*, which being of one Gender and Declension in one Number, are of a different Gender and Declension in another; as, *vas*, *vasis*, a Vessel; Plur. *vasa*, *vasorum*.

Q. What are the *Defective* Nouns?

A. *Defective* Nouns are such as want some Accident; by which is meant either Declension, Case, Gender, or Number; as, *aer*, *arma*, *cætera*, *-um*.

Q. What are the *Abundant* Nouns?

A. *Abundant* Nouns are such, as, without any Change in the Signification, are found to be of different Terminations, Genders, and Declensions; as, *Helena* and *Helene*, *Helen*.

Of the VARIABLE Nouns.

Q. How are the *Variable* Nouns divided?

A. Into *Heterogeneous* and *Heteroclites*.

Q. What is it you mean by *Heterogeneous*?

A. The *Heterogeneous* Nouns are such as are used in different Genders.

Q. Give

Of the various Divisions and Significations of Nouns, as they refer to any Language whatever.

Nouns, and all Words whatsoever, are either Simple or Compound: A Simple Word is that which is not made up of two; as, a *Book*. A Compound Word is formed by joining two Words together; as, a *Shoe-maker*.

Words are also divided into Primitive and Derivative — A Primitive is that which comes from no other Word; as, *good*, *happy*. A Derivative is that which comes from some other; as, *Goodness*, *Happiness*.

Of

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS. 25

Q. Give me a List of the most common?

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
Avernus, -i,	Averna,	<i>a River in Hell.</i>
Tartarus, -i,	Tartara,	<i>Hell.</i>
Jocus, -i,	Joci or joca,	<i>a Jest.</i>
Locus, -i,	Loci or loca,	<i>a Place.</i>
Carbasus, -i,	Carbasa,	<i>a Sail.</i>
Pergamus, -i,	Pergama,	<i>the Citadel of Troy.</i>
Coelum, -i,	Coeli,	<i>Heaven.</i>
Frenum, -i,	Freni or frena,	<i>a Bridle.</i>
Delicium, -i,	Deliciæ,	<i>a Darling.</i>
Epulum, -i,	Epulæ,	<i>a Feast.</i>
Balneum, -i,	Balneæ,	<i>a Bath.</i>

Q. What is it you call *Heteroclites*?

A. *Heteroclite* Nouns are such as pass from one Declension to another; as,

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
Vas, vasis,	Vasa, -orum,	<i>a Vessel.</i>
Jugum, -i,	Jugera, -um, ibus,	<i>an Acre.</i>

Of the DEFECTIVE Nouns.

Q. What is the Division of *Defective* Nouns?

A. They are divided into *Indeclinable* or *Aptotes*, which keep the same Termination through all the Cases and Numbers; and into such as are only declined by certain Cases. These are distinguished from one another, by Names which point out the Number of the remaining Cases: If they have no more than one Case, they are called *Monoptotes*; if two only, they are called *Diptotes*; if three, *Triptotes*; if four, *Tetraptotes*; if five, *Pentaptotes*.

Q. Are

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A *Substantive Noun*, is that which signifies the Name of a Thing; as, *a Bird*.—Substantive Nouns, with respect sometimes to Signification, sometimes to Derivation, are divided into these following:

A *Proper Substantive* is that which signifies one particular Thing of a Kind; as, *Virgil, Rome*.

An *Appellative* expresses a whole Kind of Things; as, *a Man, a Woman*.

A *Verbal Substantive* is that which comes from a Verb; as, *amor, Love; doctrina, Learning*.

A *Denominative Substantive* is that which comes from another Noun; as, *gratia, vinea, from gratus, vinum*.

A Substantive is called *collective*, when it signifies many in the Singular Number; as, *exercitus, an Army*.

D

A

26 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Are there not some Nouns which are deficient in Gender?

A. Yes; some Adjective Nouns; as, *catera, caterum*, which wants the Masculine Gender.

Q. Are there not other Nouns deficient in Number?

A. Yes; some want the Singular, and some the Plural.

OF INDECLINABLES.

Q. What Nouns are indeclinable?

A. Names of Letters, foreign or barbarous Words, all the Cardinal Numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, most Nouns that end in *i*, and the Singular Number of all Nouns that end in *u*; as, *alpha, Adami, decem, gummi, genu*.

A Verb, or any other Part of Speech, put for a Noun, is indeclinable; as, *illorum vivere est mori*, their Life resembles Death.

These are a Sort of Indeclinables in the Plural Number; *tot*, so many; *quot*, how many; *totidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quotcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

Nequam, worthless, and *pondo*, a Pound Weight, are both Singular and Plural.

Of Irregular Nouns which are only declined in certain Cases.

Q. Give me a List of such as have only one Case?

<i>Nom.</i> Iniquus, restless.	Natu, by Birth.
Exspes, hopeless.	Admonitu, by Admonition.
Potis, able.	Injussu, without Leave.
<i>Gen.</i> Nauci, of no Value.	NOTE, Most Verbals of the fourth Declension have only the Ablative; as, <i>accersitu</i> , by sending for; <i>jussu</i> , by Order, &c.
<i>Abl.</i> Diu, in the Day-time.	
Ergô for causâ, for the Sake of.	
Promptu, in Readiness.	

NOTE,

A *Patronymick* is a Noun which comes from another Substantive proper; as, from *Priamus* comes *Priamides*, the Son of Priam.—NOTE, That the Latin Patronymicks belonging to Men end in *des*, those of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. When they end in *des* and *ne*, they are of the first Declension; as, *Priamides*, *Nerine*; when they end in *is* and *as*, they are of the third; as, *Sicelis*, a Woman of Sicily; *Troas*, a Woman of Troy.

A Substantive is called an *Abstract Noun*, when it signifies the Quality of any Person or Thing, without regard to the Person or Thing in which the Quality subsists; as, *Learning*, *Roundness*.—The Adjectives from which such Substantives are formed, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the Quality, they also imply the Person or Thing possessed of that Quality; as, *learned*, *round*.

A *Diminutive Substantive* is that which comes from another, and always lessens the Signification; as, *opusculum*, a little Work, from *opus*.

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS. 27

NOTE, *Inficias* has only the Accusative Plural; as, *inficias ire*, to deny. *Ingratiis*, in spite of one's Teeth, has no more than the Ablative Plural.—*Ambage*, a Boutgate, *compede*, a Fetter, have only the Ablative in the Singular Number. But they are declined through the whole Plural, except the Genitives, *ambagum*, *compedum*, which are scarcely in use.

Q. Give me the *Diptotes*, or such as have only two Cases?

A. 1. We find these in the Nominative and Accusative Singular; *necesse*, Necessity; *volupe*, i. e. *voluptas*, Pleasure; *instar*, Likeness.—*Vesper*, of the third Declension, has the Ablative *vespere*.

2. These are seldom in the Genitive, often in the Ablative; *impetis*, *impete*, Force; *spontis*, *sponte*, of its own Accord; *verberis*, *verbere*, a Blow; but this Word in the Plural has *verbera*, -um, -ibus.

3. *Repetundarum*, *repetundis*, Money unjustly taken in the Time of one's Office, has no more but the Genitive and Ablative Plural.—Nom. Plur. *inferiæ*, Acc. Plur. *inferias*, Sacrifices for the Dead.

Q. Give me the *Triptotes*, or Words which have but three Cases?

A. Nom. and Acc. *tantundem*, Gen. *tantidem*.

These have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular; *fas*, Right; *nefas*, Wrong; *melos*, a Song; *epos*, an heroic Poem; *cacoëthes*, an evil Custom; *grates*, Thanks; *cete*, Whales; and all Greek Nouns which have *e* in the Plural, have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.

We read Nom. *dica*, a Process at Law, Acc. Sing. *dicam*, Acc. Plur. *dicas*; Gen. *feminis*, of the Thigh, Dat. *femini*, Abl. *femine*, and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. *femina*.—Dat. Sing. *precî*, to a Prayer, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, Nom Plur. *preces*, and so on in all the Cases.—*Maestus*, Voc. Sing. *maeste*, Voc. Plur. *maesti*.

These Nouns want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative Plural, and may for that Reason be reckoned *Triptotes* in the Plural Number:

Rus, the Country.

Thus, Incense.

Metus, Fear,

Mel, Honey.

Hiems, Winter.

Far, Corn.

Spes, Hope.

Acies, the Point of a Spear.

Q. Give me the *Tetraptotes*, or Nouns which have no more but four Cases?

A. The following Nouns want the Nom. and Voc. Singular.

Vicis, the Place of another.

Sordis, Filth.

Pecudis, a Beast.

Opis, Help.

Ditionis, Power.

NOTE,

28 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

NOTE, *Ditionis* wants all the Plural. We seldom find *opes*, signifying Help, in the Plural; but when it signifies Riches or Power, it is always declined in the Plural. *Pecudis* and *sordis*, have the whole Plural. We frequently read *vices*, *vicibus*, but seldom *vicum* or *vicium* in the Plural.

Nex, Slaughter; *Daps*, a Dish of Meat; *frux*, Corn, are seldom found in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

Q. Give me the *Pentaptotes*, or such as have five Cases?

A. These want the Vocative: Distributives or Partitives; as, *quidam*, *alius*. Relatives; as, *qui*, who; *qualis*, of what Kind. Negatives; as, *nullus*, none; *neuter*, neither of the two. Interrogatives; as, *quis*, who; *uter*, which of the two. Pronouns; as, *ego*, I; *sui*, of himself.

NOTE, From the Pronouns we commonly except *tu*, thou; *meus*, my or mine; *noster*, our; *nostras*, of our Country; which have the Vocative.—*Plus* wants the Dative.—*Satietas*, a Fill of any Thing, and *chaos*, a confused Mass, want the Genitive Singular, and all the Plural.—*Situs*, a Situation, wants the Gen. and Dat. Sing. and the Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plural.

These want the Genitive Plural.

Os, the Mouth.

Sol, the Sun.

Labes, a Spot.

Nex, Slaughter.

Soboles and *proles*, Offspring.

Fax, a Torch.

Lux, Light.

Fæx, the Dregs.

Of Nouns deficient in Gender.

Q. What Nouns are deprived of Gender?

A. The following Adjectives of one Termination, in the third Declension, generally want the Neuter Gender, in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural: Adjectives in *er*; as, *pauper*, *uber*, *celer*: In *fex*; as, *artifex*: In *or*; as, *memor*: In *es*; as, *ales*, *dives*: In *os*; as, *compos*, *impos*.—*Allo pubis*, *impubis*, *supplex*, *comis*, *inops*, *vigil*, *sons*, *insons*, *redux*.—*Victrix* and *ultrix* have only the Feminine Gender in the Singular Number; in the Plural they have both Feminine and Neuter; as, *victrices*, *-ia*, *ultrices*, *-ia*.

Plus has no more but the Neuter Gender in the Singular; in the Plural it is declined thro' all the Genders; as, *plures*, *plures*, *plura*.

Q. Give me the Nouns which are deprived of Number?

A. Names of Feasts and Plays, many Names of Beasts and Cities, want the Singular; as,

Bacchanalia, the Feasts of *Bacchus*.

Olympia, the Olympick Games.

Pucolica,

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS. 29

Bucolica, a Book of Pastorals wrote by Virgil.

Philippi, } *Names of Cities.*
Syracusæ, }

All the Cardinal Numbers, except *unus*, (and *mille* when it is a Substantive) want the Singular; as, *duo*, *tres*, &c. Distributives want the Singular; as, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two and two; *deni*, by tens; to which add *pauci*, -æ, -a, few; *plerique*, the most Part; and *ambo*, both.

These Nouns, of the Masculine Gender, seldom have the Singular Number:

Majores, Ancestors.
Minores, Successors.
Natales, Parentage.
Cani, Grey Hairs.
Proceres, Nobles.
Sentes, Thorns.
Vēpres, Briars.
Manes, the Spirits of the Dead
Fastus or falti, Records.
Posterī, Posterity.
Liberi, Children.
Inferi, the Gods below.

Cœlites, Saints departed.
Penates, Household Gods.
Artus, the Joints.
Fori, the Hatches of a Ship.
Fasces, Rods carried before the
Roman Magistrates.
Fines, the Frontiers of a Coun-
try.
Codicilli, Writings.
Pugillares, Writing Tables.
Superi, the Gods above.

These Nouns, of the Feminine Gender, are seldom read in the Singular Number:

Excubiæ, Watches.
Tenebræ, Darkness.
Thermæ, hot Baths.
Feriæ, Holy Days.
Exsequiæ, Funerals.
Cunæ, a Cradle.
Divitiæ, Riches.
Opes, Power.
Scalæ, a Ladder.
Plagæ, Nets.
Diræ, Curses.
Nuptiæ, a Marriage.
Primitiæ, first Fruits.
Decimæ, Tithes.
Fores, a Gate.
Præstigiæ, juggling Tricks.
Fauces, the Jaws.
Ædes, an House.

Scatebræ, a Spring.
Angustiæ, Difficulties.
Argutiæ, witty Sayings.
Facetiæ, merry Expressions.
Furiæ, the Furies.
Charites, the Graces.
Insidiæ, an Ambush.
Nugæ, idle Stories.
Reliquiæ, Remains.
Exuviæ, Spoils.
Facultates, one's Goods.
Induciæ, a Truce.
Nundinæ, a Market or Fair.
Manubiæ, Spoils taken in War.
Salebræ, rugged Places.
Literæ, an Epistle or Letter.
Bigæ, a Chariot drawn by two
Horses.

These

30 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

These Nouns, of the Neuter Gender, are deprived of the Singular.

Bona, <i>Goods.</i>	Parapherna, <i>the Wife's Provision at Marriage.</i>
Castra, <i>a Camp.</i>	Principia, <i>the General's Station in the Camp.</i>
Crepundia, <i>Children's play Things.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough Places.</i>
Æstiva, <i>Summer Quarters.</i>	Acta, <i>publick Records.</i>
Hiberna, <i>Winter Quarters.</i>	Comitia, <i>Assemblies of the People.</i>
Lamenta, <i>Lamentations.</i>	Rostra, <i>the Place of Declamation at Rome.</i>
Munia, <i>Offices.</i>	Ceraunia, <i>} high Hills on</i>
Cunabula, <i>a Cradle.</i>	Acroceraunia, <i>} the Coast of</i>
Extæ, <i>the Entrails.</i>	Arma, <i>Arms.</i>
Præcordia, <i>the Bowels.</i>	Brevia, <i>Shelves in the Sea.</i>
Lustra, <i>the Dens of wild Beasts.</i>	
Ilia, <i>the Entrails or Guts.</i>	
Mœnia, <i>the Walls of a City.</i>	
Transtra, <i>the Seats of Rowers.</i>	

Q. What Nouns want the Plural Number ?

A. Names of Virtues and Vices, Herbs, Arts, Corns, Metals, Liquors, and any Thing that can be measured or weighed, want the Plural ; as,

Justitia, <i>Justice.</i>	Triticum, <i>Wheat.</i>
Luxus, <i>Luxury.</i>	Aurum, <i>Gold.</i>
Hyssopus, <i>Hyssop.</i>	Lac, <i>Milk.</i>
Musica, <i>Musick.</i>	Butyrum, <i>Butter.</i>

Proper Names want the Plural ; as, *Georgius*.—Except when they are applied to signify many of the same Name, as we may say *plures Joves*, *duodecim Cæsares*.

Some proper Nouns are only read in the Plural Number ; as, *Veii*, *Athenæ*.

Abstract Nouns, and almost all Words of the fifth Declension, want the Plural ; as, *magnitudo*, Greatness ; *fides*, Faith.

Of the ABUNDANT Nouns.

Q. What do you call *Abundant Nouns* ?

A. Such as abound in Termination, Declension, or Gender ; as, *arbor*, *arbos* ; *laurus*, Gen. *lauri* or *laurus* ; *hic* or *hæc dies* ; *tonitrus* and *tonitru* ; *penus*, Gen. *peni* or *penus*, and *penus*, *penoris* ; *æther*, *ætheris*, or *æthera*, *æthera* ; *tigris*, Gen. *tigris* or *tigridis* ; *cassis*, *cassidis*, or *cassida*, *cassidæ* ; *grus*, *gruis*, and *grues*, *gruis* : *colus*, *domus*, *figus*, Gen. *us* or *i*, &c. &c.

RULES

RULES to know the GENDERS of NOUNS.

Q. HOW are the Rules for the Genders of Nouns divided?
A. Into *General* and *Special*.

Q. What are the General Rules?

A. Such as are applied to Nouns of all Declensions whatsoever.

Q. What are the special?

A. Such as can only be applied to the particular Declensions to which they belong.

Of the GENERAL RULES.

Q. What are the General Rules concerning the Genders of Nouns?

A. The following :

1. Nouns that can only be applied to Males are of the Masculine Gender; as, *Carolus*, Charles; *pater*, a Father; *vir*, a Man; *equus*, a Horse.

2. Nouns that can only be applied to Females are of the Feminine Gender; as, *mulier*, a Woman; *equa*, a Mare.

3. Nouns that can be applied both to Males and Females, are of the Masculine and Feminine Gender; as, *parens*, a Parent; *infans*, an Infant.

4. Names of Months, Winds, Rivers, and Mountains, are of the Masculine; as, *Aprilis*, April; *Aquilo*, the North Wind; *Tiberis*, the Tiber; *Vesuvius*, a Mountain in Italy.

NOTE 1. All Names of Months, and many Names of Winds, are rather Adjectives than Substantives.

NOTE 2. Many Names of Rivers and Mountains derive their Gender from the Termination, especially if they end in *a, e, um*; as, *hæc Matrona*, the River Marne in France; *hoc Lethe*, a River in Hell; *hoc Plemmyreum*, a River in Sicily.

5. Names of Countries and Towns are of the Feminine Gender; as, *Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Lacedæmon*, Lacedæmon.

EXCEP. 1. Names of Towns of the third Declension, ending in *us*, and some others, are Masculine; as, *Pessinus*, *-untis*.

EXCEP. 2. Some Names of Towns are Neuter; as, *Argos*, *Gadir*.

NOTE. Many Names of Towns derive their Gender from the Termination; as, *hæc Athenæ*, *hoc Londinum*.

6. Names of Trees and Shrubs are of the Feminine Gender; as, *pomus*, an Apple Tree.

Masc.

Masc. or Fem.

EXCEP. Oleaster, *a wild Olive.*

Cytisus, *a Kind of Shrub.*

Rhamnus, *Buck Thorn.*

Rubus, *the Bramble Bush.*

These

32 *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

These are *Fem.* sometimes *Masc.* *larix*, the Larch Tree ; *lotus*, the Lot Tree ; *cupressus*, the Cypress Tree.

These that end in *um* are *Neut.* as,

Buxum, the Box Tree.	Robur, Oak of the hardest Kind.
And Suber, the Cork Tree.	Acer, the Mapple Tree.
Siler, the Osier.	

7. Names of Ships and Poems are of the Feminine Gender ; as, *Argo*, the Ship Argo ; *Æneis*, the Æneid of Virgil.

NOTE 1. Proper Names given to Ships or Poems, retain their Gender ; as, *Ajax*, the Name of a Tragedy.

NOTE 2. Names of Poems wanting the Singular Number follow the Genders of their Terminations ; as, *Georgica*, Georgics.

8. Nouns are often of the same Gender with the general Word under which they are comprehended ; as, *bubo*, an Owl ; *Jadiri*, a River : The first is Feminine, because *avis*, the general Word for all Birds, is Feminine ; the last is Neuter, because *flumen*, the general Word for a River, is of that Gender.

9. Indeclinable Words are of the Neuter Gender ; as, *gumi*, Gum.

Of the SPECIAL RULES concerning the Genders of Nouns.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Q. How are the Genders of Nouns determined in every Declension ?

A. By the several Terminations or Endings of the Words.

Q. How many Terminations are there in the first Declension ?

A. Four ; *as*, *es*, *a*, *e*.

Q. What are the Rules for fixing the Gender of the Nouns of these Terminations ?

A. The following :

1. Nouns in *as* and *es* are of the Masculine Gender ; as, *tia-ras*, a Turban ; *cometes*, a Comet.

2. Nouns in *a* and *e* are of the Feminine ; as, *penna*, a Pen ; *epitome*, an Abridgment.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Masc.*

Hadria, the Adria-	Cometa, a Comet.
tick Sea.	Planeta, a Planet.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Fem.* or *Masc.* *Talpa*, a Mole ; *Lama*, a Doe.

EXCEP. 3. *Pascha*, the Passover, is *Neut.*

RULES for the GENDERS. 33

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How many are the Terminations of the second Declension?

A. Seven; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on.*

Q. What are the Rules for fixing the Gender of each of these Terminations?

A. The following:

1. Nouns in *er, ir, ur, and us*, are of the Masculine; as, *liber*, a Book; *vir*, a Man; *satur*, full; *ventus*, the Wind.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Fem.*

Vannus, a Sieve.

Carbasus, a Sail.

Alvus, the Belly.

Humus, the Ground.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Neut.* *virus*, Poison; *pelagus*, the Sea.

EXCEP. 3. *Grossus*, a green Fig, is *Masc.* or *Fem.* *Colus*, a Distaff, *Fem.* seldom *Masc.* *Vulgus*, the Rabble, *Neut.* seldom *Masc.*

2. Greek Nouns in *os*, changed by the Latins into *us*, are also Masculine; as, *Dialogus*, a Dialogue.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Fem.*

Abyssus, an Abyss.

Eremus, a Desert.

Antidotus, an Antidote.

Perimetros, the Circumference of a Circle.

Pharus, a Watch-tower.

Arctos, a Constellation.

Dialectus, a Dialect.

Diametros, a Line called the Diameter.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Masc.* or *Fem.* *Balanus*, the Fruit of the Palm Tree; *phaselus*, a little Ship; *barbitus*, a Harp.

EXCEP. 3. *Atomus*, an Atom, is *Fem.* seldom *Masc.* *Camelus*, a Camel, is *Masc.* seldom *Fem.*

EXCEP. 4. Nouns compounded of *odos* and *phthongos* are *Fem.* as, *methodus*, a Method; *diphthongos*, a Diphthong.

EXCEP. 5. Some Names of Gems and Plants, which, because of the general Words *gemma* and *planta*, are *Fem.* as, *crystallus*, Crystal; *hyssopus*, Hyssop.

3. Nouns in *um* and *on* are of the Neuter; as, *templum*, a Temple; *symposion*, a Banquet.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How do you propose to account for the Gender of Nouns in the third Declension?

A. By separating all the Terminations of the same Gender by themselves, and considering them one after another; those of

34 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

of the Masculine Gender in the first Place, those of the Feminine Gender next, and those of the Neuter Gender last; in the same Way as when we accounted for the Termination of the Genitives of these Nouns.

Q. Repeat again the Terminations of Nouns that are Masculine in the third Declension?

A. There are five; *o, n, er, or, os.*

Q. What are the Rules to fix the Gender of each of these Terminations?

A. Also five:

1. Nouns in *o* are of the Masculine Gender; as, *sermo*, a Speech.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Fem.* *Halo*, a Circle about the Sun or Moon; *caro*, Flesh; *echo*, an Echo.

EXCEP. 2. Nouns ending in *io*, whether derived from Verbs or Nouns, and signifying Things that do not fall under the external Senses, are *Fem.* as, *opinio*, an Opinion; *rebellio*, Rebellion.—But when Words signify Things that fall under the Senses, they are *Masc.* according to the general Rule; as, *titio*, a Firebrand.

EXCEP. 3. Nouns ending in *do* and *go* which are *Fem.* as, *formido*, Fear; *imago*, an Image.—Yet these Nouns ending in *do* and *go*, are *Masc.*

Ordo, Order.

Udo, a Linen Sock.

Tendo, a Tendon.

Ligo, a Spade.

Cardo, a Hinge.

Margo, the Brink or Margin, is also *Masc.* seldom *Fem.* *Cupido*, when it signifies the God of Love, is *Masc.* but when it signifies Desire, it is oftner *Fem.* especially in Prose.

2. Nouns in *n* are of the Masculine; as, *pecten*, a Comb.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Fem.*

Sindon, fine Linen.

Aëdon, a Nightingale.

Alcyon, a King's Fisher.

Icon, an Image or Picture.

EXCEP. 2. All Nouns ending in *men*, which are *Neut.* as,

Carmen, a Verse.

And Gluten, Glue.

Inguen, the Groin.

Unguen, Ointment.

Pollen, fine Flour.

3. Nouns in *er* are of the Masculine; as, *imber*, a Shower.

EXCEP. Names of Fruits and Plants, and some others, which are *Neut.* as,

Piper, Pepper.

Papaver, Poppy.

Tuber, an Excrescence.

Uber, a Pap, Fatness.

Spinther, a Broach or Clasp.

Ver, the Spring.

Cadaver, a Carcass.

Iter, a Journey.

Linter, a little Boat, is *Masc.*

or *Fem.*

4. Nouns

RULES for the GENDERS.

35

4. Nouns in *or* are of the Masculine ; as, *calor*, Heat.

EXCEP. These which are *Neut*.

Cor, the Heart.

Ador, Wheat.

Marmor, Marble.

Æquor, the Sea.

Arbor, a Tree, is Fem.

5. Nouns in *os* are of the Masculine ; as, *ros*, Dew.

EXCEP. These which are *Fem*.

Arbos, a Tree.

Cos, a Whetstone.

Dos, a Dowry.

Eos, the Morning.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Neut. os, oris*, the Mouth ; *os, ossis*, a Bone.

Of Nouns of the Feminine Gender in the third Declension.

Q. What are the Terminations of Nouns in the Feminine Gender in the third Declension?

A. Six ; *s, x, as, es, is, ys*.

Q. What are the Rules to fix the Gender of Nouns ending in these Terminations?

A. Also fix :

1. Nouns in *s*, with a Consonant before it, are of the Feminine ; as, *hyems*, Winter.

EXCEP. 1. Poly syllables in *ps*, and some others, which are *Masc. as*,

Hydrops, a Dropsy.

Pons, a Bridge.

Fons, a Well.

Mons, a Hill.

Dens, a Tooth.

Chalybs, Steel.

Gryps, a Griffon.

Rudens, a Cable.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Masc. and Fem*.

Seps, a Kind of Serpent.

A Hedge.

Serpens, a Serpent.

Scrobs, a Ditch.

Stirps, the Stock of a Tree.

Offspring.

Adeps, Fatness.

2. Nouns in *x* are of the Feminine ; as, *pax*, Peace.

EXCEP. 1. Poly syllables in *ax* and *ex*, which are *Masc. as*, *thorax*, a Breast or Breast-plate ; *frutex*, a Shrub.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Fem*.

Fornax, a Furnace.

Smilax, Rope-weed, a Kind of Herb.

Panax, the Herb All-heal.

Forfex, a Pair of Scissars.

Carex, a Sedge.

Halex, a Herring.

Supellex, Furniture.

Ex-

Masc.

Nouns

36 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

EXCEP. 3. These which are *Masc.*

Calix, a Cup. The Bud of a Flower.	Coccyx, a Cuckow.
Phoenix, the Bird Phenix.	Fornix, a Vault.
Bombyx, a Silk Worm.	Onyx, Alabaster.
	Oryx, a wild Goat.

NOTE, That *Bombyx*, when it signifies *Silk*, is *Fem.*

EXCEP. 4. These which are *Masc.*, seldom *Fem.*

Tradux, the Graff of a Vine.	Obex, a Bar or Bolt.
Grege, a Flock.	Pumex, a Pumice Stone.
Cortex, the Bark of a Tree.	Varix, a swoln Vein.

EXCEP. 5. These which are *Masc.* and *Fem.*

Calx, the Heel, or the Goal.	Sardonyx, a precious Stone.
Hystrix, a Porcupine.	Rumex, the Herb Sorrel.
Imbrex, a Gutter-tile.	Silex, a Flint.

EXCEP. 6. These which are *Fem.* seldom *Masc.*

Limax, a Snail.	Sandix, a reddish or purple Colour.
Lynx, a Beast of a very sharp Sight.	Perdix, a Partridge.
Atriplex, the Herb Orage, is <i>Neut.</i> seldom <i>Fem.</i>	

3. Nouns in *as* are of the Feminine Gender; as, *pietas*, Piety.

EXCEP. 1. Greek Nouns having *antis* in the Genitive, are *Masc.* as, *adamas*, an Adamant.

EXCEP. 2. Greek Nouns having *atis* short in the Genitive, are *Neut.* as, *erysipelas*, a Sore, St. Anthony's Fire.—Also *vas*, *vasis*, a Vessel, is *Neut.*

4. Nouns in *es* are of the Feminine; as, *sedes*, a Seat.

EXCEP. 1. These which are *Masc.*

Poples, the Ham of the Leg.	Limes, a Bound or Limit.
Ames, a Fowler's Staff.	Stipes, the Stock of a Tree.
Fomes, Fuel.	Trames, a Path.
Pes, the Foot.	Termes, an Olive Bough.
Paries, a Wall.	Gurges, a Gulf.
Palmes, a Vine Branch.	Cespes, a Turf.

EXCEP. 2. All Greek Nouns which are *Masc.* as, *magnes*, the Loadstone.—Yet observe that the following Greek Words are *Neut.*

Hippomanes, a Kind of Venom.	Nepenthes, an Herb called Kill-grief.
Panaces, an Herb called All-heal.	Cacoethes, an evil Custom.

Ales, a Bird; *palumbes*, a Ring Dove, are *Masc.* and *Fem.*
—Observe that *as*, Brass, is *Neut.*

RULES for the GENDERS. 37

5. Nouns in *is* are of the Feminine ; as, *avis*, a Bird.

EXCEP. 1. Latin Nouns in *nis*, and many others, which are *Masc.* as,

Panis, Bread.
Piscis, a Fish.
Callis, a beaten Road.
Vermis, a Worm.
Veclis, a Leaver.
Menfis, a Month.
Cucumis, a Cucumber.
Mugilis, a Mullet-fish.
Postis, a Post.
Sanguis, Blood.
Fascis, a Bundle.
Orbis, a Circle. The World.
Fustis, a Staff.

Axis, an Axle Tree.
Glis, a Rat.
Collis, a Hill.
Caulis, the Stalk of an Herb.
Follis, a Pair of Bellows.
Ensis, a Sword.
Cenchris, a Kind of speckled
 Serpent.
Vomis, a Plough Share.
Torris, a Firebrand.
Lapis, a Stone.
Unguis, the Nail.
Aqualis, a Water Pot, an Ewer.

EXCEP. 2. These which are *Masc.* or *Fem.*

Finis, the End.
Clumis, the Buttock.
Torquis, a Chain.

Canalis, a Canal.
Scrobis, a Ditch.
Anguis, a Serpent.

EXCEP. 3. These which are *Masc.* seldom *Fem.*

Pulvis, Dust.
Cinis, Ashes.
Amnis, a River.

Corbis, a Twig Basket, is *Fem.*
 seldom *Malc.*

6. Nouns in *ys* are of the Feminine Gender ; as, *chlamys*, a Soldier's Cloak.

Of Nouns of the Neuter Gender in the third Declension.

Q. What are the Terminations of the Neuter Gender in the third Declension ?

A. The following: *a, e, c, l, t, ar, ur, us.*

Q. What are the Rules to fix the Gender of the Nouns of these Terminations ?

A. 1. Nouns in *a, e, c, l, t,* are of the Neuter ; as,

Dogma, an Opinion.
Mare, the Sea.
Lac, Milk.

Animal, a living Creature.
Caput, the Head.

EXCEP. These which are *Masc.* *sol*, the Sun ; *mugil*, a Mullet-fish.—*Sal*, Salt, is *Masc.* seldom *Neut.*

38 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

2. Nouns in *ar* are of the Neuter Gender ; as, *calcar*, a Spur.
—But *salar*, a Trout, is *Masc.*

3. Nouns in *ur* are Neuter ; as, *murmur*, a Noise.

EXCEP. These which are *Masc.* *sursur*, Bran ; *vultur*, a Vulture ; *turtur*, a Turtle.

Nouns in *us* are of the Neuter ; as, *corpus*, the Body.

EXCEP. 1. Nouns having the Genitive in *utis* and *udis*, which are *Fem.* as, *virtus*, Virtue ; *palus*, a Fen or Bog.

EXCEP. 2. The Compounds of *pus* or *πῆς*, i. e. *pes*, are *Masc.* as, *tripus*, any Thing with three Feet ; *mus*, a Mouse ; *lepus*, a Hare.—*Lagopus*, a Kind of Bird, *Fem.* seldom *Masc.* *grus*, a Crane, *Fem.* seldom *Masc.*

The FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. How many Terminations are there in the Fourth Declension ?

A. Two ; *us* and *u*.

Q. What are the Gender Rules for these Terminations ?

A. The following :

1. Nouns in *us* are of the Masculine ; as, *vultus*, the Countenance.

EXCEP. These which are *Fem.*

Manus, the Hand.
Porticus, a Gallery.
Tribus, a Tribe.

Domus, a House.
Ficus, a Fig Tree or Fig.
Acus, a Needle.

Specus, a Den, and *penus*, all Kind of Provision, are *Masc.* or *Fem.*

2. Nouns in *u* are Neuter ; as, *cornu*, an Horn.

The FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. How many Terminations are there in the fifth Declension ?

A. One ; namely *es*.

Q. What is the Gender Rule for this Declension ?

A. Nouns in *es* are Feminine ; as, *res*, a Thing.

EXCEP. *Dies*, a Day, *Masc.* or *Fem.* *Meridies*, Mid-day, *Masc.*

NOTE, *Dies* is mostly used in the Masculine by the Orators. When it is designed to express a long Time by the Poets, it is Feminine. In the Plural it is always Masculine.

DECLEN.

DECLENSION of ADJECTIVE NOUNS.

Q. INTO what are the Latin Adjectives divided ?

A. Into Adjectives of the first and second Declension, and Adjectives of the third only.

Q. What is the Termination of Adjectives of the first and second Declension ?

A. All Adjectives of the first and second Declension have, in the Masculine Gender, the Terminations *us* and *er* ; as, *bonus, tener* ; for the Feminine they have *a* ; as *bona, tenera* ; for the Neuter *um* ; as, *bonum, tenerum*.

Q. How are Adjectives of the first and second Declension declined ?

A. Like Substantives of the first and second Declension : Thus, *bonus, -a, -um*, is an Adjective of the first and second Declension, and is declined like *dominus, penna, regnum*.

Q. How are Adjectives of the third Declension declined ?

A. Like Substantives of the third Declension : Thus, *mitis, -is, -e*, is an Adjective of the third Declension, and is declined like *ovis* and *sedile*.

NOTE, Every Adjective which has three Terminations, or three different Ways of ending in the Nominative, is of the first and second Declension.—But we must except the following, which, tho' they have three Terminations, are of the third Declension.

Acer, sharp.
Alacer, chearful.
Celer, swift.
Celeber, famous.
Saluber, profitable.
Volucer, swift.
Campester, belonging to the plain Fields.

Equester, belonging to a Horseman.
Pedester, belonging to a Footman.
Paluster, moorish.
Silvester, belonging to a Wood.

These Adjectives are declined like *acer*.

Declen-

Of the different Kinds of ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective signifies the Quality or Property of a Thing; as, *quick*.—Adjectives are differently divided with respect to Signification and Derivation :
Verbal Adjectives ; as, *capax*, capable, from *capio*.

Denominative Adjectives ; as, *cœlestis*, heavenly, from *cælum*.

Diminutive

38 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

2. Nouns in *ar* are of the Neuter Gender ; as, *calcar*, a Spur.
—But *salar*, a Trout, is *Masc.*

3. Nouns in *ur* are Neuter ; as, *murmur*, a Noise.

EXCEP. These which are *Masc.* *sursur*, Bran ; *vultur*, a Vulture ; *turtur*, a Turtle.

Nouns in *us* are of the Neuter ; as, *corpus*, the Body.

EXCEP. 1. Nouns having the Genitive in *utis* and *udis*, which are *Fem.* as, *virtus*, Virtue ; *palus*, a Fen or Bog.

EXCEP. 2. The Compounds of *pus* or *πῆς*, i. e. *pes*, are *Masc.* as, *tripus*, any Thing with three Feet ; *mus*, a Mouse ; *lepus*, a Hare.—*Lagopus*, a Kind of Bird, *Fem.* seldom *Masc.* *grus*, a Crane, *Fem.* seldom *Masc.*

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. How many Terminations are there in the Fourth Declension ?

A. Two ; *us* and *u*.

Q. What are the Gender Rules for these Terminations ?

A. The following :

1. Nouns in *us* are of the Masculine ; as, *vultus*, the Countenance.

EXCEP. These which are *Fem.*

Manus, the Hand.
Porticus, a Gallery.
Tribus, a Tribe.

Domus, a House.
Ficus, a Fig Tree or Fig.
Acus, a Needle.

Specus, a Den, and *penus*, all Kind of Provision, are *Masc.* or *Fem.*

2. Nouns in *u* are Neuter ; as, *cornu*, an Horn.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. How many Terminations are there in the fifth Declension ?

A. One ; namely *es*.

Q. What is the Gender Rule for this Declension ?

A. Nouns in *es* are Feminine ; as, *res*, a Thing.

EXCEP. *Dies*, a Day, *Masc.* or *Fem.* *Meridies*, Mid-day, *Masc.*

NOTE, *Dies* is mostly used in the Masculine by the Orators. When it is designed to express a long Time by the Poets, it is Feminine. In the Plural it is always Masculine.

DECLEN.

DECLENSION of ADJECTIVE NOUNS.

Q. INTO what are the Latin Adjectives divided ?

A. Into Adjectives of the first and second Declension, and Adjectives of the third only.

Q. What is the Termination of Adjectives of the first and second Declension ?

A. All Adjectives of the first and second Declension have, in the Masculine Gender, the Terminations *us* and *er* ; as, *bonus, tener* ; for the Feminine they have *a* ; as *bona, tenera* ; for the Neuter *um* ; as, *bonum, tenerum*.

Q. How are Adjectives of the first and second Declension declined ?

A. Like Substantives of the first and second Declension : Thus, *bonus, -a, -um*, is an Adjective of the first and second Declension, and is declined like *dominus, penna, regnum*.

Q. How are Adjectives of the third Declension declined ?

A. Like Substantives of the third Declension : Thus, *mitis, -is, -e*, is an Adjective of the third Declension, and is declined like *ovis* and *fedile*.

NOTE, Every Adjective which has three Terminations, or three different Ways of ending in the Nominative, is of the first and second Declension.—But we must except the following, which, tho' they have three Terminations, are of the third Declension.

Acer, sharp.
Alacer, chearful.
Celer, swift.
Celeber, famous.
Saluber, profitable.
Volucer, swift.
Campester, belonging to the plain Fields.

Equester, belonging to a Horseman.
Pedester, belonging to a Footman.
Paluster, moorish.
Silvester, belonging to a Wood.

These Adjectives are declined like *acer*.

Declen-

Of the different Kinds of ADJECTIVES.

An Adjective signifies the Quality or Property of a Thing ; as, *quick*.——
 Adjectives are differently divided with respect to Signification and Derivation :

Verbal Adjectives ; as, *capax*, capable, from *capio*.

Denominative Adjectives ; as, *cœlestis*, heavenly, from *cœlum*.

Diminutive

40 | *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

Declension of Adjectives in the first and second Declension.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus,	-a,	-um,	boni,	-æ,	-a,
<i>Gen.</i>	boni,	-æ,	-i,	bonorum,	-arum,	-orum,
<i>Dat.</i>	bono,	-æ,	-o,	bonis,	-is,	-is,
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum,	-am,	-um,	bonos,	-as,	-a,
<i>Voc.</i>	bone,	-a,	-um,	boni,	-æ,	-a,
<i>Abl.</i>	bono,	-a,	-o :	bonis,	-is,	-is.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher,	-a,	-um,	pulchri,	-æ,	-a,
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchri,	-æ,	-i,	pulchrorum,	-arum,	-orum,
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchro,	-æ,	-o,	pulchris,	-is,	-is,
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum,	-am,	-um,	pulchros,	-as,	-a,
<i>Voc.</i>	pulcher,	-a,	-um,	pulchri,	-æ,	-a,
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchro,	-a,	-o :	pulchris,	-is,	-is.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

The following Adjectives have *ius* in the Genitive, and *i* in the Dative :

Unus, <i>one.</i>	Alter, <i>one of two.</i>
Uter, <i>whether of the two.</i>	Alius, <i>another, when we speak of many.</i>
Neuter, <i>neither.</i>	Totus, <i>whole.</i>
Solus, <i>alone.</i>	Nullus, <i>none.</i>
Ullus, <i>any.</i>	

NOTE,

Diminutive Adjectives ; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, little.

An Adjective Noun is called *Interrogative* when it serves to ask a Question; as, *quantus*, how great; *quis*, who.

An *Indefinite Adjective* is that which is not restrained or confined to Particulars; as, *aliquis*, somebody; *aliquid*, something.

A *Relative Adjective* is that which relates to something going before; as, *alter*, one of the two.

A *Numeral Adjective* signifies Number.—Of these there are four Sorts; *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*; to be afterwards explained among the Numeral Adjectives.

A *Gentile* or *Patrial Adjective* is derived from a Substantive, and denotes one's Country; as, *Edinburgensis*.

A *Possessive Adjective* signifies Possession or Property, and may come either from an appellative or proper Substantive; as, *paternus*, *Herculeus*.

There are, lastly, some Adjectives derived from Participles, Adverbs and Prepositions; as, *filitius*, *crastinus*, *contrarius*, from *filius*, *cras*, *contra*.

Of ADJECTIVE NOUNS. 41

NOTE, The Antients declined these Adjectives as if they had been Adjectives of the first and second Declension; *unus, -a, -um*, Gen. *uni, -æ, i, &c.*

Some Adjectives in *er*, and Words compounded of *gero* and *fero*, keep *e* before *r* in the Genitive, and by that Means have a Syllable more in the Genitive than in the Nominative; as,

Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i>	Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>
Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Iber, <i>a Spaniard.</i>
Tener, <i>tender.</i>	Lacer, <i>torn or rent.</i>
Miser, <i>wretched.</i>	Laniger, <i>that bears Wool.</i>
Exter, <i>foreign.</i>	Opifer, <i>that brings Help.</i>
Liber, <i>free.</i>	Dexter, <i>right, favourable.</i>

NOTE, 1. All other Adjectives like *pulcher* lose *e* in the Genitive, and, by the general Rule of the second Declension, have the Genitive and Nominative equal in Number of Syllables; as, *niger, nigra, -um*, Gen. *nigri, -æ, -i.*

NOTE 2. We say *liber, libri*, a Book; and *liber, libri*, the inner Bark of a Tree.—*Dexter* hath oftner *dextri* than *dexteri*.

Declen-

Of an ADJECTIVE in ENGLISH.

The English Adjective has no Difference of Case, Gender or Number; it is immediately placed before its Substantive; as, *a good Boy; a good Girl.*

EXCEP. 1. When a Verb comes between the Adjective and Substantive; as, *happy is the Man*; where, because of *is* the intervening Verb, *happy*, the Adjective, is separated from the Substantive.

EXCEP. 2. When the Adjective has some Case after it, which it may be said to govern; as, *a Subject loyal to his Prince.*

EXCEP. 3. In Poetry sometimes, for the better Sound; as, *human Face divine.*

EXCEP. 4. When there are more Adjectives than one joined together, the Adjective is commonly put after the Substantive; as, *a General both wise and valiant.*

NOTE 1. That the Adjectives *sundry* and *both*, are only added to Substantives of the Plural Number; as, *sundry Times, both the Men.*

NOTE 2. *All*, when it is added to the Singular Number, signifies the whole Quantity; as, *all the Wine*; when joined to the Plural, it signifies all the Number; as, *all the Boys.*

NOTE 3. *Every* is joined only to the Singular Number; as, *every Man, every Boy, not every Men, every Boys.*

NOTE 4. *Much* is added to the Singular, and signifies a great Quantity; as, *much Wine*, that is, a great deal of Wine.

NOTE 5. *Many* is joined to a Substantive Plural, and signifies a great Number; as, *many Men*. *More*, with a Substantive Singular, signifies a greater Quantity; as, *more Wine*, that is, a greater Quantity of Wine. When it is joined to the Plural, it signifies a greater Number; as, *more Men*, that is, a greater Number.

NOTE 6. *Each* is only joined to a Substantive Singular; as, *each Man, not each Men.*

42 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Declension of Adjectives of the third Declension.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	felix,	-ix,	-ix,	felices,	-ices,	-icia,
Gen.	felicitis,	-icis,	-icis,	felicitium,	-icium,	-icium,
Dat.	felici,	-ici,	-ici,	felicitibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
Acc.	felicem,	-icem,	-ix,	felices,	-ices,	-icia,
Voc.	felix,	-ix,	-ix,	felices,	-ices,	-icia,
Abl.	felice,	or -ici,	&c.	felicitibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	mitis,	mitis,	mite,	mites,	mites,	mitia,
Gen.	mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
Dat.	miti,	miti,	miti,	mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
Acc.	mitem,	mitem,	mite,	mites,	mites,	mitia,
Voc.	mitis,	mitis,	mite,	mites,	mites,	mitia,
Abl.	miti,	miti,	miti :	mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

1. When we are at a Loss for the Genitive of any Adjective, (such as *præceps*, *præcipitis*; *locuples*, *locupletis*) we may find them under the Terminations of the third Declension. Such Adjectives being few in Number, and coming in as Exceptions from some of the general Rules concerning the Genitive of the third Declension, it was better, I thought, to place them there, than set them down here separately by themselves.

The Ablative of Adjectives of this Declension ends in *e* or *i*; as, *felice* or *felici*.

EXCEP. 1. When the Neuter of any Adjective ends in *e*, it has *i* only in the Ablative; as, *mite*, Abl. *miti*.

NOTE, That the Poets, for the Sake of their Verse, sometimes use *e* instead of this *i*; as, *specie cæleste resumpta*.

EXCEP. 2. *Memor*, mindful, and *par*, equal, which have only *i*, tho' they have not *e* in the Neuter. Yet the Compounds of *par* have *e* or *i*; as, *impar*, unequal, Abl. *impare* or *impari*.

EXCEP. 3. These which take only *e* in the Ablative.

Hospes, foreign or strange.

Pauper, poor.

Sospes, safe.

Dives, rich.

Cœlebs, unmarried.

Compos, possessed of a Thing.

Impos, not Master of a Thing.

Potens, able, or powerful.

Impubes, unmarriedable.

Superstes, surviving.

Pubes, -eris, marriageable.

Tricorpor, three-bodied.

Tripes, three-footed.

Concolor, of the same Colour.

NOTE, Most Adjectives ending in *ns*, also Participles and Comparatives, have much oftner *e* than *i* in the Ablative; as,

Prudens, *prudente*, seldom *i*, wife.

Doctior, *doctiore*, seldom *i*, more learned.

Amans, *amante*, seldom *i*, loving.

Nom. mitior,

Of ADJECTIVE NOUNS. 43

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	mitior, -or, -us,	mitiores, -ores, -ora,
Gen.	mitioris, -oris, -oris,	mitiorum, -orum, -orum,
Dat.	mitiori, -ori, -ori,	mitioribus, -oribus, -oribus,
Acc.	mitiorem, -orem, -us,	mitiores, -ores, -ora,
Voc.	mitior, -or, -us,	mitiores, -ores, -ora,
Abl.	mitiore or -ori, &c.	mitioribus, -oribus, -oribus.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.	acer or acris, acris, acre,	acres, acres, acria,
G.	acris, acris, acris,	acrium, acrium, acrium,
D.	acri, acri, acri,	acribus, acribus, acribus,
A.	acrem, acrem, acre,	acres, acres, acria,
V.	acer or acris, acris, acre,	acres, acres, acria,
A.	acri, acri, acri:	acribus, acribus, acribus.

NOTE. All Adjectives of the third Declension are like some of these four; *felix, mitis, mitior, acer.*

REMARKS upon the CASES.

Adjectives, which are sometimes used like Substantives, have the same Ablative as when they are used like Adjectives; as,

Bipennis, -i, a Halbert or any two edged Instrument.

Molaris, -i, a Millstone, a Cheek Tooth.

Quadriremis, -i, a Ship with four Banks of Oars.

Thus also, the Names of Months:

Aprilis, -i,

November, -bri,

December, -bri,

Quintilis, -i, the old Name of July.

EXCEP. 1. Nouns ending in *il, x, ceps, and ns*, which have *e*; as,

Vigil, a Watchman.

Senex, an old Man.

Index, a Discoverer.

Princeps, a Prince.

Particeps, a Partaker.

Adolescens, a young Man.

Infans, an Infant.

Serpens, a Serpent.

Rudis, a Rod given to Gladiators when discharged.

NOTE, That *tridens* hath *tridente* or *tridenti* in the Ablative.

EXCEP. 2. Some Adjectives relating to Men, and ending in *is*, have sometimes *e* when used substantively, but much oftner *i*, in the Ablative; as

Familiaris, a Friend.

Rivalis, a Rival.

Sodalis, a Comrade.

Natalis, a Birth Day.

Volucris, a Bird.

When

44 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

When the Ablative ends in *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, then the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural take *ia*; as, *mitis*, Abl. *miti*, *mitia*. *Felix*, *felice* or *-ci*, *felicia*.

EXCEP. Comparatives, which have only *a*; as, *mitior*, *mitiora*; *plus* has *plura*, seldom *pluria*; *vetus*, *vetera*, not *veteria*.

When the Ablative ends in *i*, or in *e* and *i*, Adjectives have the Genitive Plural in *ium*; as, *mitium*, *feliciūm*.

EXCEP. These following which have *um*, not *ium*:

Vigil, watchful.

Vetus, old.

Uber, fruitful.

Inops, poor.

Supplex, suppliant.

Celer, swift.

Memor, mindful.

Mugilis, a Mullet-fish.

Conſors, that hath the same Lot.

Pugil, a Champion.

EXCEP. 2. Comparatives have *um*; as, *durior*, *duriorum*.

Also the Compounds of *genus*, *cipio*, *facio*, and *caput*; as,

Degener, unworthy of his Ancestors.

Particeps, partaking of.

Artifex, artificial.

Præceps, headlong.

Occiput, the hind Head.

Adjectives that have *ium* in the Genitive Plural, have the Accusative in *eis* or *is*; as, *omnis*, Gen. *omnium*, Acc. *omnes*, *oneis*, or *omnis*.

Of the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES:

2. **H**OW many Degrees of Comparison are there?

A. There are three Degrees of Comparison; the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative; as, *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned; *doctissimus*, most learned.

Q. Why is the first called the Positive Degree?

A. Because it signifies the Quality of a Thing, and no more.

N. B. Tho' it does not compare Things, we reckon it one of the Degrees of Comparison, because the other two are formed from it.

Q. What is the Comparative Degree?

A. The Comparative Degree is that which plainly implies Comparison, by heightening the Quality; as, *pulchrior*, fairer. Yet there is another Way of comparing Things, by lessening or sinking the Quality; as, from *parvus*, little, comes *minor*, less.

Q. What is the Superlative Degree?

A. The Superlative Degree is that which raises the Quality to a very high Pitch; as, *pulcherrimus*, the fairest.—Observe, that

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES. 45

that we may also compare Things in this Degree, by sinking the Quality to the very lowest; as, *minimus*, the least, from *parvus*.

Q. Can all Adjectives be compared?

A. No Adjectives can be compared, unless such as are capable of having their Signification heightened or diminished.

Q. How does the Positive Degree end?

A. The Positive Degree ends several different Ways; as, *bonus*, *mitis*, *felix*, *tener*.

Q. How does the Comparative end?

A. Always in *or* for the Masculine or Feminine, and *us* for the Neuter; as, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*.

Q. How does the Superlative end?

A. Always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

Q. How is the Comparison of Adjectives divided?

A. Into *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

Q. What is Regular Comparison?

A. Regular Comparison is that which always follows some general Rule.

Q. What is the Irregular?

A. That which observes no general Rule.

Q. What is Defective Comparison?

A. That which wants one or more of the Degrees.

Regular Comparison.

Give me an Example of Regular Comparison?

Sing. Num.			Plnr. Num.		
N. mitis,	-or,	-issimus,	N. mites,	-ores,	-issimi,
mitis,	-or,	-issima,	mites,	-ores,	-issimæ,
mite,	-us,	-issimum,	mitia,	-ora,	-issima,
G. mitis,	-oris,	-issimi,	G. mitium,	-orum,	-issimorum,
mitis,	-oris,	-issimæ,	mitium,	-orum,	-issimarum,
mitis,	-oris,	-issimi,	mitium,	-orum,	-issimorum,
D. miti,	-ori,	-issimo,	D. mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis,
miti,	-ori,	-issimæ,	mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis,
miti,	-ori,	-issimo,	mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis,
A. mitem,	-orem,	-issimum,	A. mites,	-ores,	-issimos,
mitem,	-orem,	-issimam,	mites,	-ores,	-issimas,
mite,	-us,	-issimum,	mitia,	-ora,	-issima,
V. mitis,	-or,	-issime,	V. mites,	-ores,	-issimi,
mitis,	-or,	-issima,	mites,	-ores,	-issimæ,
mite,	-us,	-issimum,	mitia,	-ora,	-issima,
A. miti,	-ore or -ori,	-issimo,	A. mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis,
miti,	-ore or -ori,	-issima,	mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis,
miti,	-ore or -ori,	-issime :	mitibus,	-oribus,	-issimis.

46 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of Forming the COMPARATIVE.

Q. How is the Comparative Degree formed ?

A. It is formed from the first Case of the Positive that ends in *i*, by adding *or* for the Masculine and Feminine, and *us* for the Neuter : Thus from *durus*, hard, Gen. *duri*, we form the Comparative *durior*, harder.

EXCEP. 1. Adjectives ending in *dicus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, *volus*, which come from the Verbs *dico*, *facio*, *loquor*, *volo* ; they have *entior* from an old Positive that ended in *ens* ; as,

Maledicus,	one that railleth ;	maledicentior.
Beneficus,	beneficent ;	beneficentior.
Magniloquus,	one that boasteth ;	magniloquentior.
Malevolus,	malevolent ;	malevolentior.

EXCEP. 2. The following Adjectives :

Juvenis,	young ;	junior.
Sinister,	left ;	sinisterior.

Of Forming the SUPERLATIVE.

Q. Whence is the Superlative Degree formed ?

A. It is formed from the same first Case in *i* of the Positive, by adding *ssimus* ; as, from *durus*, *-i*, comes *durissimus*.

EXCEP. 1.

OF ENGLISH COMPARISON.

The Comparative Degree in English is formed two Ways, either by adding *er* to the Positive ; as, *fair*, *fairer* ; or by putting *more* before it ; as, *more fair*.

The Superlative is also formed two Ways, by adding *est* after the Positive ; as, *fair*, *fairest* ; or by putting *most* or *very* before it ; as, *most fair*, *very fair*.

NOTE, That Polysyllable-Adjectives, like the following, form the Comparative by putting the Word *more* before them, and the Superlative by putting the Word *most* before them ; as,

General,	Honest,	Visible,
Commendable,	Virtuous,	Wicked,
Loving,	Constant,	Rigid,
Peevish,	Excellent,	Troublesome.

Some are compared with *better* for the Comparative, and *best* for the Superlative ; as, *learned*, *better learned*, *best learned*. *Natured*, *better natured*, *best natured*.

Some Adjectives are like none of these, and are therefore called *Irregular* ; as, *good*, *better*, *best*. *Bad*, *evil* or *ill*, *worse*, *worst*. *Little*, *less*, *least*.

These want the Comparative : *Middle*, *middlemost* ; *very*, *veryest*.

Of IRREGULAR COMPARISON. 47

EXCEP. 1. Positives which end in *er*, form the Superlative by adding *rimus* after *r*; as, from *tener* comes *tenerrimus*.—Yet these four, *dexter*, right; *citer*, near; *sinister*, left; *exter*, foreign; have *dextimus*, *citimus*, *sinissimus*, *extimus* oftner *extremus*, in their Superlatives.

EXCEP. 2. Facilis, *easy*; facillimus.
 Similis, *like*; simillimus.
 Humilis, *low*; humillimus.

EXCEP. 3. The above-mentioned Compounds of *dicus*, *ficus*, &c. which have *entissimus*; as, *maledicentissimus*, *magniloquentissimus*, *malevolentissimus*.

NOTE, That *mirificus* has *mirificissimus*.

EXCEP. 4. Posterus, *behind*; postremus.
 Superus, *above*; supremus and summus.
 Interus, *inward*; intimus.
 Inferus, *below*; infimus and imus.
 Nuperus, *late or new*; nuperrimus.
 Vetus, *old*; veterrimus.
 Maturus, *ripe*; maturrimus,
 Nequam, *bad*; nequissimus.

Of Irregular Comparison.

Give me an Example of Irregular Comparison.

Sing. Num.			Plur. Num.	
N. bonus,	melior,	optimus,	boni,	meliores, optimi,
bona,	melior,	optima,	bonæ,	meliores, optimæ,
bonum,	melius,	optimum,	bona,	meliora, optima,
G. boni,	melioris,	optimi,	bonorum,	meliorum, optimorum,
bonæ,	melioris,	optimæ,	bonarum,	meliorum, optimarum,
boni,	melioris,	optimi,	bonorum,	meliorum, optimorum,
D. bono,	meliori,	optimo,	bonis,	melioribus, optimis,
bonæ,	meliori,	optimæ,	bonis,	melioribus, optimis,
bono,	meliori,	optimo,	bonis,	melioribus, optimis,
A. bonum,	meliozem,	optimum,	bonos,	meliores, optimos,
bonam,	meliozem,	optimam,	bonas,	meliores, optimas,
bonum,	melius,	optimum,	bona,	meliora, optima,
V. bone,	melior,	optime,	boni,	meliores, optimi,
bona,	melior,	optima,	bonæ,	meliores, optimæ,
bonum,	melius,	optimum,	bona,	meliora, optima,
A. bono,	meli- ³ -ore,	optimo,	bonis,	melioribus, optimis,
bona,	meli- ³ -ori,	optima,	bonis,	melioribus, optimis,
bono,	meli- ³ -ore,	optimo:	bonis,	melioribus, optimis.

Q. What

48. RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What other Adjectives are Irregular ?

Malus, pejor, pessimus :	Evil, worse, worst.
Magnus, major, maximus :	Great, greater, greatest.
Parvus, minor, minimus :	Little, less, least.

Multus, plurimus ; multa, plurima ; multum, plus, plurimum : much, more, most.

NOTE, The Reason why *multus* wants the Comparative *plus* in the Masculine and Feminine Genders, is because *plus* in the Singular Number has no more but the Neuter Gender ; but in the Plural Number *plus* is declined thro' all the Genders, *plures, plures, plura* ; for this Reason we compare *multus* in the Plural Number thro' all the Genders :

Masc. Multi,	plures,	plurimi,
Fem. Multæ,	plures,	plurimæ,
Neut. Multa,	plura,	plurima, &c.

Of Defective Comparison.

Q. What Adjectives are deficient in Comparison ?

A. 1. These want the Positive Degree :

Prior,	former ;	primus.
Uterior,	further ;	ultimus.
Propior,	nearer ;	proximus.
Orior,	swifter ;	ocissimus.
Deterior,	worse ;	deterimus.

2. These want the Comparative :

Nuperus,	late ;	nuperrimus.
Meritus,	deserving ;	meritissimus.
Novus,	new ;	novissimus.
Par,	equal ;	parissimus.
Sacer,	holy ;	facerrimus.
Invictus,	invincible ;	invictissimus.
Persuafus,	persuaded ;	persuassissimus.
Inclytus,	renowned ;	inclytissimus.

3. These want the Superlative Degree :

Satur,	full ;	saturnior.
Diuturnus,	lasting ;	diuturnior.
Ingens,	great ;	ingentior.
Pronus,	inclined ;	pronior.

Opimus,

Of DEFECTIVE COMPARISON. 49

Opimus,	<i>rich ;</i>	opimior.
Adolescens,	<i>young ;</i>	adulescentior.
Juvenis,	<i>young ;</i>	junior.
Senex,	<i>old ;</i>	senior.

4. Verbals also in *bilis*, and Adjectives which end in *ilis* long, and in *alis*, and others of a different Termination, want the Superlative ; as,

Tolerabilis,	<i>that may be endured ;</i>	tolerabilior.
Juvenilis,	<i>youthful ;</i>	juvenilior.
Capitalis,	<i>chief, deadly ;</i>	capitalior.
Arcanus,	<i>secret ;</i>	arcanior.
Declivus,	<i>bending downward ;</i>	declivior.
Longinquus,	<i>far off ;</i>	longinquior.

5. These three want both Positive and Superlative.

Anterior,	<i>former.</i>
Sequior,	<i>worse.</i>
Sator,	<i>better.</i>

6. These Adjectives have seldom any of the Degrees which signify Comparison, that is, the Comparative and Superlative :
Adjectives compounded of Nouns or Verbs ; as,

Vericolor, <i>of divers Colours.</i>	Ædificator, <i>a Covenant</i>
Tardigradus, <i>slow-paced.</i>	Breaker.
Degener, <i>degenerating.</i>	Lucifugus, <i>that flies the Light.</i>

Participles in *dus*, and Verbals in *bundus* ; as,

Amandus, <i>to be loved.</i>	Errabundus, <i>wandering.</i>
Legendus, <i>to be bewailed.</i>	Pudibundus, <i>bashful.</i>

Adjectives that end in *us* pure, that is, with a Vowel before *us* ; as, *dubius*, doubtful.

NOTE, Such Adjectives in *us* pure, are frequently compared by the Words *magis* and *maxime* ; as, *pius, magis pius, maxime pius*.—We compare in the same Manner Adjectives that would otherwise sound harsh, by reason of their Length or Number of Syllables ; as, *legitimus, magis legitimus, maxime legitimus ; commendabilis, magis commendabilis, maxime commendabilis*.

Adjectives that end in *icus*, short, are not compared ; *famelius*, hungry ; *modicus*, small.

Nor those that end in *ivus, inus, imus*, and *crus* ; as,

Fugitivus, <i>that flieth away.</i>	Legitimus, <i>lawful.</i>
Matutinus, <i>early.</i>	Canorus, <i>shrill.</i>

Lastly, Diminutives, and some others ; as, *tenellus*, somewhat tender ; *alvus*, gracious ; *mirus*, wonderful.

50 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The Declension of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Q. INTO what are the Numeral Adjectives divided ?

A. Into Cardinal and Ordinal.

Q. What are the Cardinal Numbers ?

Unus,	one.	Viginti unus,	twenty one.
Duo,	two.	Viginti duo, &c.	twenty two.
Tres,	three.	Triginta,	thirty.
Quatuor,	four.	Quadraginta,	forty.
Quinque,	five.	Quinquaginta,	fifty.
Sex,	six.	Sexaginta,	sixty.
Septem,	seven.	Septuaginta,	seventy.
Octo,	eight.	Octoginta,	eighty.
Novem,	nine.	Nonaginta,	ninety.
Decem,	ten.	Centum,	an hundred.
Undecim,	eleven.	Ducenti,	two hundred.
Duodecim,	twelve.	Trecenti,	three hundred.
Tredecim,	thirteen.	Quadringenti,	four hundred.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Quingenti,	five hundred.
Quindecim,	fifteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Septingenti,	seven hundred.
Septendecim,	seventeen.	Octingenti,	eight hundred.
Octodecim,	eighteen.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Novemdecim,	nineteen.	Mille,	a thousand.
Viginti,	twenty.		

Q. Are any of these Adjectives declined ?

A. None, except the three first ; *unus*, *duo*, *tres* ; *unus*, -a, -um, &c.

Q. How are *duo* and *tres* declined ?

A. In the following Manner :

	Sing.		Plur.
N. duo,	duæ, duo,	N. tres,	tres, tria,
G. duorum,	duarum, duorum,	G. trium,	trium, trium,
D. duobus,	duabus, duobus,	D. tribus,	tribus, tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas, duo,	A. tres,	tres, tria,
V. duo,	duæ, duo,	V. tres,	tres, tria,
A. duobus,	duabus, duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus, tribus.

From *quatuor*, including itself, the Cardinal Numbers are all indeclinable to *centum*, an Hundred ; from *ducenti*, two Hundred, to *mille*, they want the Singular, and are declined in the Plural like *boni*, -æ, -a ; as, *trecenti*, -æ, -a. *Mille*, when it is an Adjective, is indeclinable in both Numbers ; when a Substantive, it is indeclinable in the Singular, but in the Plural we decline it, *millia*, -ium, -ibus, like *sedilia*, -ium, -ibus.

Q. Repeat

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. 51

Q. Repeat the Ordinal Numbers.

Primus,	<i>the first.</i>	Quadragesimus,	<i>the fortieth.</i>
Secundus,	<i>the second.</i>	Quinquagesimus,	<i>the fiftieth.</i>
Tertius,	<i>the third.</i>	Sexagesimus,	<i>the sixtieth.</i>
Quartus,	<i>the fourth.</i>	Septuagesimus,	<i>the seventieth.</i>
Quintus,	<i>the fifth.</i>	Octogesimus,	<i>the eightieth.</i>
Sextus,	<i>the sixth.</i>	Nonagesimus,	<i>the ninetieth.</i>
Septimus,	<i>the seventh.</i>	Centesimus,	<i>the hundredth.</i>
Octavus,	<i>the eighth.</i>	Ducentesimus,	<i>the two hundredth.</i>
Nonus,	<i>the ninth.</i>	Trecentesimus,	<i>the three hundredth.</i>
Decimus,	<i>the tenth.</i>	&c.	<i>dredth.</i>
Undecimus,	<i>the eleventh.</i>	Millesimus,	<i>the thousandth.</i>
Duodecimus,	<i>the twelfth.</i>	Bis millesimus,	<i>the two thousandth.</i>
Decimus tertius,	<i>the thirteenth.</i>	&c.	<i>sandth.</i>
Decimus quartus,	<i>the fourteenth.</i>	Decies millesimus,	<i>the ten thousandth.</i>
&c.		&c.	<i>sandth.</i>
Vigesimal,	<i>the twentieth.</i>	Vicies millesimus,	<i>the twenty thousandth.</i>
Vigesimal primus,	<i>the twentieth and first.</i>	Tricies millesimus,	<i>the thirty thousandth.</i>
Vigesimal secundus, &c.	<i>the twentieth and second.</i>		
Trigesimal,	<i>the thirtieth.</i>		

Q. How are the Ordinal Numbers declined ?

A. They are declined like Adjectives of the first and second Declension, both in the Singular and Plural Number ; as, *primus, -a, -um ; secundus, a, um, &c.*

Q. Are there any other Divisions of the Numeral Adjectives ?

A. They are divided into *Multiplicative* and *Distributive*.

Q. What are the Multiplicative ?

A. The Multiplicative are Adjectives of the third Declension, like *felix*, which gradually increase the Number or Quantity of Things ; as, *simplex, duplex, triplex*.

Q. What are the Distributive ?

A. The Distributive are Adjectives of the first and second Declension, having only the Plural Number, and divide any Numbers into Parts ; as, *singuli, -a, -a, one by one ; bini, two by two*.

The Cardinal are so called, because they are the original Numbers from whence the rest are formed.

The Ordinal take that Name, because they point out the Order or Succession of Things.—They are all formed from the Cardinal.

Of

52 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of the DECLENSION of PRONOUNS.

Q. HOW are the Pronouns divided ?

A. Into Simple and Compound.

Q. How many simple Pronouns are there ?

A. Eighteen ; *Ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Q. Have you nothing to observe upon these Pronouns ?

A. The three first, *ego, tu, sui*, are called Substantive Pronouns; the other fifteen are Adjectives.

Q. Decline the Substantive Pronouns ?

Ego, I.		
	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>ego, I,</i>	Nom. <i>nos, we,</i>
Gen.	<i>mei, of me,</i>	Gen. <i>nostrum or nostri, of us,</i>
Dat.	<i>mihî, to me,</i>	Dat. <i>nobis, to us,</i>
Acc.	<i>me, me,</i>	Acc. <i>nos, us,</i>
Voc.	_____	Voc. _____
Abl.	<i>me, with me :</i>	Abl. <i>nobis, with us.</i>

Tu, Thou.		
	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>tu, thou,</i>	Nom. <i>vos, ye or you,</i>
Gen.	<i>tui, of thee,</i>	Gen. <i>vestrum or vestri, of you,</i>
Dat.	<i>tibi, to thee,</i>	Dat. <i>vobis, to you,</i>
Acc.	<i>te, thee,</i>	Acc. <i>vos, you,</i>
Voc.	<i>tu, O thou,</i>	Voc. <i>vos, O ye or you,</i>
Abl.	<i>te, with thee :</i>	Abl. <i>vobis, with you.</i>

REMARKS upon the CASES.

The Dative *mihî* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *mi*. We find, from several Examples of *Terence* and *Plautus*, that of old the Genitive Plural of *ego* was *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*; but they were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*. We use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives, and Superlatives; *nostri* and *vestri* after other Nouns and Verbs; tho' these last do sometimes admit of *nostrum* and *vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself.

Sui,

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom.
Gen. sui, of himself, &c.
Dat. sibi, to himself,
Acc. se, himself,
Voc.
Abl. se, with himself :

Nom.
Gen. sui, of themselves,
Dat. sibi, to themselves,
Acc. se, themselves,
Voc.
Abl. se, with themselves.

The Adjective Pronouns.

Ille, illa, illud ; He, she, that or it.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. ille, illa, illud,
Gen. illius, illius, illius,
Dat. illi, illi, illi,
Acc. illum, illam, illud,
Voc. ille, illa, illud,
Abl. illo, illa, illo :

Nom. illi, illæ, illa,
Gen. illorum, illarum, illorum,
Dat. illis, illis, illis,
Acc. illos, illas, illa,
Voc. illi, illæ, illa,
Abl. illis, illis, illis.

Hic, hæc, hoc ; This.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. hic, hæc, hoc,
Gen. hujus, hujus, hujus,
Dat. huic, huic, huic,
Acc. hunc, hanc, hoc,
Voc. hic, hæc, hoc,
Abl. hoc, hac, hoc :

Nom. hi, hæ, hæc,
Gen. horum, harum, horum,
Dat. his, his, his,
Acc. hos, has, hæc,
Voc. hi, hæ, hæc,
Abl. his, his, his.

Is,

OF PRONOUNS.

The Pronouns are divided into *Substantive* and *Adjective* ; as, *ego, tu, ille, ipse*. Simple and Compound ; as, *quis, aliquis, qui, quidam*. Also into *Demonstratives, Relatives, Possessives, Patrials or Gentiles, and Interrogatives*.

The *Demonstratives* are *hoc, this ; illud, that*.

A *Relative* Pronoun is that which refers to an Antecedent, or Substantive Noun so called, because it goes before the Relative ; as, *who, which, that*.

The *Possessive* Pronouns are, *meus, my or mine ; tuus, thy or thine ; noster, vester*.

The *Gentiles or Patrials* signify one's Country ; as, *nostras, of our Country ; vestras, of your Country ; cujas, of what Country*.

Of them also two are *Interrogatives* ; as, *quis and cujus*.

54 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Is, ea, id ; *He, she, it, or that.*

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	is,	ea, id,	Nom.	ii,	eæ, ea,
Gen.	ejus,	ejus, ejus,	Gen.	eorum,	earum, eorum,
Dat.	ei,	ei, ei,	Dat.	iis or eis,	&c.
Acc.	eum,	eam, id,	Acc.	eos,	eas, ea,
Voc.	_____		Voc.	_____	
Abl.	eo,	ea, eo :	Abl.	iis or eis,	&c.

Quis, quæ, quod or quid ; *Who, which, what ?*

Sing.			Plur.		
N.	quis,	quæ, quod or quid,	N.	qui,	quæ, quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus, ejus,	G.	quorum,	quarum, quorum,
D.	cui,	cui, cui,	D.	queis or quibus,	&c.
A.	quem,	quam, quod or quid,	A.	quos,	quas, quæ,
V.	_____		V.	_____	
A.	quo,	qua, quo :	A.	queis or quibus,	&c.

Qui, quæ, quod ; *Who, which, that.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N.	qui,	quæ, quod,	N.	qui,	quæ, quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus, ejus,	G.	quorum,	quarum, quorum,
D.	cui,	cui, cui,	D.	queis or quibus,	&c.
A.	quem,	quam, quod,	A.	quos,	quas, quæ,
V.	_____		V.	_____	
A.	quo,	quæ, quo :	A.	queis or quibus,	&c.

REMARKS upon the CASES.

All Pronouns, by which we cannot call upon a Person or Thing, want the Vocative ; as, we cannot say *O nemo*, *O Nobody* ; nor *O nullus*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*. These therefore, with severals of the same Kind, want the Vocative.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis* ; as, *Qui tantus fuit labor*. Cic. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris*. Ter.

When we use *quod*, and its Compounds *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. they always agree with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case ; as, *aliquod magnum malum*, some great Evil ; but *quid*, and its Compounds *aliquid*, *quidvis*, *quiddam*, either want the Substantive, or govern it in the Genitive ; as, *Aliquid pecuniæ dedit*, he gave some Money.

The Relative *qui* hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative thro' all the Genders and Numbers ; as in the Singular we say *quo* or *qui*, *qua* or *qui*, *quo* or *qui* ; in the Plural *queis* or *qui*, *quibus* or *qui*.

Of

Of Compound Pronouns.

Q. What are the Compound Pronouns ?

A. They are generally made up of the two simple Pronouns, *quis* and *qui*, with some other Word or Syllable added to them; as, *quisnam*, *quidam*.

How is that Composition commonly made ?

In Compound Pronouns, *quis* is sometimes in the first, and sometimes in the last Part of the Word; *qui* is always in the first Place.

Q. What are the Compound Pronouns where *quis* is put first ?

A. The following :

Nominative,	Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam, quænam, quodnam or quidnam, <i>who</i> ;	cujusnam, cuinam.	
Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam or quidpiam, <i>any one</i> ;	cujuspiam, cuipiam.	
Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam or quidquam, <i>any one</i> ;	cujusquam, cuiquam.	
Quisque, quæque, quodque or quidque, <i>every one</i> ;	cujusque, cuique.	
Quisquis, ——— quidquid or quicquid, <i>whosoever</i> ;	cujuscuque, cuicui.	

And so forth in the rest of the Cases like the simple *quis*.

NOTE 1. *Quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominative and Accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*, Acc. *quenquam*, without the Feminine. The Plural is scarcely used.

NOTE 2. There are two Compound Pronouns where *quis* is put in the Middle; *ecquisnam*, *unusquisque*; the first is only declined in the Nominative, the second wants the Plural.

Q. What

Of the ENGLISH PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is an irregular Kind of Noun; or, it is a Part of Speech which supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your Name, I say *you*; for *Thomas* did it, I say *he* did it; and so on.

The English Pronouns have a twofold State: The foregoing State; as, *I*, *we*; and the following State; as, *me*, *us*. We use the foregoing State when the Pronoun is put alone; as, *who* did it? *I*; or when it goes before the Verb; as, *I* love, not *me* love; *we* love, not *us* love. But when the Pronoun is put after the Verb or Preposition, it must always be in the following State; as, *the Man* loves *me*, and not *the Man* loves *I*; *John* wrote to *us*, but never *John* wrote to *we*.

There are some Pronouns which signify Persons; as, *I*, is of the first Person Singular; *we*, the first Plural: *Thou* or *you*, is of the second Person Singular; *you* and *ye*, are of the second Person Plural. The Pronoun *he*, and every other Substantive Noun, are of the third Person Singular: *They*, and every other Substantive Noun, are of the third Plural.

Out of Complaisance we use *you* for *thou* and *thee*; *your* for *thy* and *thine*. We never use *thou* in the Singular Number, unless when we speak in an emphatical

56 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What are the Compound Pronouns where *quis* is put last?

	Nominative,	Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod or aliquid, <i>some</i> ;	alicujus,	alicui.
Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,	ecquod or ecquid, <i>who?</i>	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis, si qua,	si quod or si quid, <i>if any one</i> ;	si cujus,	si cui.
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or nequid, <i>lest any one</i> ;	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis, num qua, num quod or num quid,	<i>whether any one</i> ;	num cujus,	num cui.

NOTE, That these, and only these, have *qua* instead of *que* in the Feminine Gender of the Nominative Singular, and in the Neuter of the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

Q. What are the Pronouns compounded by *qui*, which always stands in the first Place?

	Nominative,	Gen.	Dat.
Quicumque, quæcunque, quodcunque	<i>whosoever</i> ;	cujuscunque,	cuicunque.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam or quiddam,	<i>some</i> ;	cujusdam,	cuidam.
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet or quidlibet,	<i>any one</i> ;	cujuslibet,	cuilibet.
Quivis, quævis, quodvis or quidvis,	<i>any one</i> ;	cujusvis,	cuivis.

NOTE 1. All these Compound Pronouns want the Vocative, except *quisque*, *aliquis*, *quilibet*, *unusquisque*.

NOTE 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

NOTE 3. *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the Accusative Singular; and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Genitive Plural; *n* being put for *m*, for the better Sound.

Q. Are

phatical Manner, or make a distinct Application to some particular Person; as, *Remember, O King, thou art the Man!* We commonly use *you* for *ye*; sometimes we use *ye* before the Verb, by way of Distinction, Familiarity, or Contempt; as, *ye are the Men*: But it is often used after the Verb or Preposition; as, *I will give ye a Taste of it. I will go away from ye.*

Who is a Pronoun that we commonly use in asking a Question, and is the same in both Numbers. *Whom* is the following State of *who*; which Custom, however, places before the Verb; as, *he is the Man whom I saw*: But for the most Part it follows the Preposition; as, *he was the Man to whom I gave it.* Except when the Preposition is put out of its natural Place; as, *whom did you give that to? Whom did you go with.*

We use *who* when we speak of Persons; as, *who is the Man?* *What* is used when we speak of Things; as, *what Book is that?* Observe that *what* is sometimes used when we speak of Persons, but then it seems to be of a different Signification from the former Example; as, *what Man is he?* that is, *what Sort of a Man.*

Which is used when we speak of Things; as, *which is the Place?*

Whom, when we speak of Persons; as, *whom saw you?*

Th

Of PRONOUNS.

57

Q. Are there not other Compound Pronouns?

A. Yes; the following Compound of *Is, ea, id*, and the Syl-
lable *dem*.

Sing.

Plur.

N. idem,	eadem,	idem,	iidem,	eadem,	eadem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D. eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	eisdem or iisdem,	&c.	
A. eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eisdem,	eandem,	eadem,
V. idem,	eadem,	idem,	iidem,	eadem,	eadem,
A. eodem,	eadem,	eodem:	eisdem or iisdem,	&c.	

Q. What is the Pronoun compounded of *iste* and *hic*?

A. Nom. *isthic, isthæc, isthoc* or *isthuc*; Acc. *isthunc, isthanc, isthoc* or *isthuc*; Abl. *isthoc, isthac, isthoc*: And *isthæc*, in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural.

Q. What are the other Compound Pronouns?

A. Of *ecce* and *is* is compounded *eccum, eccam*; Plur. *eccos, eccas*. And from *ecce* and *ille* comes *ellum, ellam*; *ellos, ellas*.

Of

The Pronouns *my, thy, her, our, your, their*, are always to be used when joined to Substantives; as, *this is my House*; *this is thy Book*, &c. But *mine, thine, hers, yours, theirs*, are always used when the Substantives are left out, or not expressed; as, *this House is mine*; that is, *this House is my House*. Observe, however, that *mine* and *thine* are sometimes used with a Substantive, when it begins with a Vowel, but not otherwise; as, *my Arm*, or *mine Arm*; *thy own*, or *thine own*.

This, in the Plural Number, has *these*: *That* has *those*.

NOTE 1. The Pronoun *that* is often used instead of *who, whom, or which*; as, *I saw a Man that (who) had been on the same Side that (which) I had been on*. He is the Man that (whom) I saw.

NOTE 2. When *this* and *that* refer to two Words going before, *this* belongs to the last and nearest Word; *that* belongs to the first or most distant Word; as, *Peter and Charles are both brave Men; but this is most famous for his Conduct, that for his Valour*. Here, *this* relates to *Charles*, *that* to *Peter*.

We use *this* and *that* both when we speak of Persons and Things; as, *this or that Man*; *this or that Book*.

The Pronoun *own* is sometimes used in an emphatical Manner; as, *my own House*; *your own Lands*.

Self, in this expressive Manner, is placed after possessive Pronouns; as, *myself, thyself, ourselves*.

These are a Kind of indeclinable Pronouns in English:

Hereof,	Of this.	Hereby,	By this.
Thereof,	Of that.	Thereby,	By that.
Whereof,	Of which.	Whereby,	By what.
		Herein,	In this.
Hereabouts,	About this Place.	Therein,	In that.
Thereabouts,	About that Place.	Wherein,	In what or
Whereabouts,	About what Place.		in which.
		Herewith,	With this.
Hereupon,	Upon this.	Therewith,	With that.
Thereupon,	Upon that.	Wherewith,	With which or
Whereupon,	Upon what.		with what.

H

Of the V E R B.

Let it be carefully observed in this Place, before we enter upon the Verb, that we chuse to explain what is meant by Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons, under the Article of English Grammar. We presume the Beginner will find this easier, than if these Things were explained by Latin Examples. The Explication, however, being once understood in English, may be applied to the Latin Verbs without any Change; for the Nature of Voices, Moods, Tenses, &c. are precisely the same in both Languages. For Example: Once we know that the English Verb, I am loved, is called the Passive Voice, because it signifies some Suffering of the Person before it; will we not also know that amor, which is the Passive of amo, is called by that Name, for the very same Reason, because it signifies the Suffering of its Person ego? The same Observation will hold as to Moods, Tenses, and the rest of the Accidents which are used in declining a Verb. There are indeed some Observations to be made afterwards upon the Tenses of Latin Verbs, which cannot be applied to the Tenses of English Verbs. But any Thing of this Kind will be considered separately in the Text by itself, as Observations upon the Latin Conjugations.

Q. HOW is a Verb declined?

A. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

Q. How many Voices are there?

A. Two; the Active and Passive.

Q. How many Moods are there?

A. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

Q. How many Numbers are there?

A. Two; Singular and Plural.

Q. How many Tenses are there?

A. Five; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

Q. How many Persons are there?

A. Three;

OF ENGLISH VERBS.

A Verb is that Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer; as, I am, I love, I am loved. Or, a Verb may be called that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of Things. Or, whatever Word, with a Substantive Noun, makes full Sense or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which

A. Three; *First, Second, Third.*

Q. Into what is the Conjugation of Verbs divided?

A. Into *Regular* and *Irregular.*

Q. What is Regular Conjugation?

A. That which observes some general Rules; as, *amo.*

Q. What is Irregular Conjugation?

A. That which does not observe the same fixed and stated Rules; as, *sum, volo.*

Of Regular Conjugation.

Q. How many Regular Conjugations are there?

A. Four; *First, Second, Third, and Fourth.*

Q. How are these Conjugations known?

The First hath *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; as, *amare.*

The Second hath *e* long before *re* of the Infinitive; as, *docere.*

The Third hath *e* short before *re* of the Infinitive; as, *legere.*

The Fourth hath *i* long before *re* of the Infinitive; as, *audire.*

Q. What are the principal Tenses in the Conjugation of Verbs?

A. The Present of the Indicative, the Perfect of the Indicative, the first Supine, and the Present of the Infinitive.

Q. Why are they called principal Tenses?

A. Because from them all the rest are formed; and the Derivative Tenses always keep the Characteristick of the Tenses from which they are formed.

Q. Give

which does not make Sense or a Sentence, is not a Verb. 2. Every Word that admits of *he* or *it* before it, is a Verb, otherwise not.

In a Verb are to be considered, *Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

There are two Voices, *Active* and *Passive.*

The Active Voice affirms some Action to be done by the Person or Nominative before it; as, *I love.*

The Passive Voice signifies some Suffering of the Person or Nominative before it; as, *I am loved.*

Moods are the different Changes of Verbs, to signify the different Manner of the being, doing, or suffering of any Thing.

There are four Moods, the *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive.*

The Indicative Mood barely affirms or denies, or asks a Question; as, *I call; I do not call; do I call?*—When a Question is asked, we put the Nominative Case after the Sign of the Verb; as, *do you love me? did you write a Letter?* This Rule always holds, except when some Interrogative, or Word that naturally implies a Question, goes before the Verb; as, *who writes? what is written.*

The

60 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Give me the Rules for forming the Derivative from the principal Tenses ?

From *o* are formed *am* and *em* ;
 From *i*, *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem* ;
U, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um* ;
 All other Parts from *re* do come ;
As, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, and *i*,
Ns, and *dus*, *dum*, *do*, and *di*.

Q. What is the Meaning of the first Line or Rule ?

A. By *o* is meant the Present of the Indicative, *amo*, from which is formed *am*, that is, the Future and Present of the Subjunctive in the third and fourth Conjugations ; as, *legam*, *audiam*, from *lego* and *audio* ; and *em*, which stands for the Present of the Subjunctive of the first Conjugation ; as, *amem*, from *amo*.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Second ?

A. By *i* is meant the Perfect of the Indicative *amavi*, from which comes *ram*, the Plu-perfect of the Indicative ; as, *amaveram* ; *rim*, the Perfect of the Subjunctive *amaverim* ; and *ro*, the Future of the Subjunctive *amavero* ; *ſſe*, the Perfect of the Infinitive *amaviſſe* ; and *ſſem*, the Plu-perfect of the Subjunctive *amaviſſem* ; which are all formed from the Perfect *amavi*.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Third ?

A. By *um* is understood the first Supine *amatum*, from which comes *u* the second Supine, *us* the Perfect Participle, and *rus* the Future Participle ; as, *amatu*, *amatus*, *amaturus*.

Q. What

The Subjunctive Mood depends upon some other Word in the same Sentence, either before or after it, between which there is commonly a Conjunction ; as, *I read that I may learn*.—— This Mood contains a great Variety of Significations : It serves to express any Thing by Wish ; as, *would to God !* It signifies the Possibility of a Thing, whether it can be done or not ; as, *I can*, or *I could do such a Thing*. It expresses the Liberty of the Speaker to do a Thing ; as, *I may*, or *I might kill you*. It signifies also our Inclination to do a Thing : as, *I would stay in the Country*. And lastly, it expresses the Necessity of any Thing to be done ; as, *I should keep my Word*. The Necessity of doing a Thing is also signified by *must* or *ought*.

A Verb is of the Imperative Mood, when it commands, exhorts or entreats ; and then the Nominative is put after the Verb, or after the Sign of the Verb ; as, *love thou* ; *do thou love*.

The Imperative Mood wants the first Person Singular and Plural, because none can command or intreat themselves.

The Infinitive Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, without naming either the Person or Thing that does or suffers. In English the Preposition *to* is commonly put before it ; as, *to love*.

Of

Q. What is the Meaning of the Fourth ?

A. By *re* is understood the Present of the Infinitive *amare*, from which is formed *bam* the Imperfect of the Indicative, *bo* the Future of the Indicative, of the first and second Conjugations; *rem* the Imperfect of the Subjunctive; *a* the Imperative of the first Conjugation; *e* the Imperative of the second and third; and *i* the Imperative of the fourth; *ns* the Present Participle; *dus* the Future Participle Passive; *dum*, *do*, and *di*, the Gerunds.

Q. How do you conjugate the Passive of any Verb ?

A. To conjugate the Passive of any Verb, we use the Present of the Indicative, the Perfect of the Indicative, and the Present of the Infinitive.

Q. Whence is the Present of the Indicative Passive formed ?

A. From the Present of the Indicative Active, by adding the Letter *r* after *o*; as, *amor* from *amo*.—We also form the Future of the Indicative Passive in the first and second Conjugations, by adding *r* after *o*; as, *amabor*, *docebor*, from *amabo*, *docebo*.

Q. Whence is the Perfect Passive formed ?

A. The Perfect Passive in all Verbs is formed from the first Supine of the Active, by changing *m* into *s*, and adding *sum vel fui*; as, from *amatum* comes *amatus sum vel fui*.

Q. How is the Present of the Infinitive Passive formed ?

A. In the first Conjugation, *are*, of the Present of the Infinitive Active, is changed into *ari*; as, from *amare* comes *amari*. In the Second, *ere*, long, is changed into *eri*; as, from *docere*, *doceri*. In the Third, *ere*, short, is changed into *i*; as, from *legere*, *legi*; and in the Fourth, *ire* is changed into *iri*; as, from *audire* comes *audiri*.

Q. How are the other Tenses in the Passive Voice formed ?

A. All the other Tenses of the Passive Voice come from the same Tenses in the Active; the Future Passive of the third and fourth Conjugations from the Future Active, and so on, by changing *m* into *r*; thus, from *amabam* we have *amabar*, &c.

AMO,

OF TENSES.

Tenses are the Times of a Verb, which serve to express the different Times of being, doing or suffering. There should naturally, therefore, be only three Tenses, the *Present* Tense, or the Time which now is; the *Perfect*, or that which is past; the *Future*, or that which is to come. However, when we consider not only the Time of doing an Action, but also whether the Action be finished or not; in this View we may add three other Tenses: So that altogether

62 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

AMO, *To love.*

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

Præs. Indic.

Am-o,

Perf.

am-avi,

Sup.

am-atum,

Præs. Infin.

am-arc.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Present Tense.

Sing. { 1 A M-o,
2 A am-as,
3 am-at :
Plur. { 1 am-amus,
2 am-atis,
3 am-ant.

1 I Love, or do love,
2 Thou lovest, or dost love,
3 He loveth, or doth love :
1 We love, or do love,
2 Ye (or you) love, or do love,
3 They love, or do love.

The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 am-abam,
2 am-abas,
3 am-abat :
Plur. { 1 am-abamus,
2 am-abatis,
3 am-abant.

1 I loved, or did love.
2 Thou lovedst, or did love,
3 He loved, or did love :
1 We loved, or did love,
2 Ye loved, or did love,
3 They loved, or did love.

The

altogether they make six Tenses or Times; viz. Three which express the Action as not done, the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, and the *Future* of the Indicative; and three which express the Action as done, the *Perfect* of the Indicative, the *Pluperfect* of the Indicative, and the *Future* of the Subjunctive.

The *Present Tense* expresses something present, which is now doing or suffering; as, *I beat, I am beaten.*

The *Imperfect* denotes a Thing begun but not finished; which Thing is past, if we regard only the Time of which we immediately speak, but which was present at some Time past, when some other Thing happened; as, *I was at Supper when he entered.* Here the Action of supping is past in regard to the Time in which this was spoken, but it was present when the other Thing happened, or when the Man entered.

NOTE, That both the *Present* and *Imperfect* of the Indicative Active, may be often englished by the *Present Participle* in *ing*, with the *Passive Signs* *am, art, is, was, wert, were*; as, *I am writing; I was writing, &c.*

The

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	am-avi,	1	<i>I have loved,</i>
	2	am-avisti,	2	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
	3	am-avit :	3	<i>He hath loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-avimus,	1	<i>We have loved,</i>
	2	am-avistis,	2	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
	3	am-averunt, or -avere.	3	<i>They have loved.</i>

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	am-averam,	1	<i>I had loved,</i>
	2	am-averas,	2	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	3	am-averat :	3	<i>He had loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-averamus,	1	<i>We had loved,</i>
	2	am-averatis,	2	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
	3	am-averant.	3	<i>They had loved.</i>

The Future.

Sing.	1	am-abo,	1	<i>I shall or will love,</i>
	2	am-abis,	2	<i>Thou shalt or wilt love,</i>
	3	am-abit :	3	<i>He shall or will love :</i>
Plur.	1	am-abimus,	1	<i>We shall or will love,</i>
	2	am-abitis,	2	<i>Ye shall or will love,</i>
	3	am-abunt.	3	<i>They shall or will love.</i>

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

The Perfect of the Indicative is often englished like the Imperfect ; as, *nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved this Man.

After *antequam*, *postquam*, *ubi*, or *ut* for *postquam*, it may be englished as the Pluperfect ; as, *postquam superavimus Isthmum*, after we had past the Isthmus.

The Future Tense, signifying bare Event, may be changed into the Future in *rus* ; as, we say *ridebo*, or *risurus sum*, I shall laugh.

The

The Future of the Indicative signifies an Action that will be in Time coming ; as, *I shall love*.

NOTE 1. That *will* declares the Will or Purpose of the Person to which it is joined ; *shall*, on the contrary, implies the Will of another, who promises or threatens to do the Thing, or causes it to be done, permits, commands it, or the like ; as, *thou shalt bear it*.

NOTE 2. The Future of the Indicative, importing Will or Purpose, when used interrogatively, in the second Person, has the Sign *will* ; as, *will you write Letters?*

64 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

The Present.

Sing.	1	am-em,	1	<i>I may or can love.</i>
	2	am-es,	2	<i>Thou mayst or canst love.</i>
	3	am-et :	3	<i>He may or can love :</i>
Plur.	1	am-emus,	1	<i>We may or can love,</i>
	2	am-etis,	2	<i>Ye may or can love,</i>
	3	am-ent.	3	<i>They may or can love.</i>

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

The Present of the Subjunctive, with some Conjunction, Adverb, Indefinite, or Relative before it, is generally englished like the Indicative ; as, *cum valeam*, seeing I am in Health.— But observe, that with Conjunctions, Indefinites, and Relatives, it also retains the Signs *may* or *can* ; as, *oro ut ames*, I entreat that you may love.—The Present of the Subjunctive is englished by the Participle in *ing*, with *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, as in the Present of the Indicative Mood ; as, *cum ego scribam literas*, seeing I am writing Letters.—The Present of the Subjunctive after *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes englished like the Imperfect ; as, *quasi intelligant qualis sit*, as if they understood what kind of a Person he is.—When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is frequently englished by *shall* or *should* ; as, *eloquar*, *an sileam*, shall I speak, or be silent ? *singula quid referam*, why should I mention every Thing ?

The

Letters ? will you do your Endeavour ? but in the other Persons it has *shall* ; as, *shall I bear the whole Matter ? shall he suffer Punishment ?*

NOTE 3. The Future of the Indicative, signifying no more but a future Event, or that a Thing will happen so and so, has, in the first Person, the Sign *shall*, the rest of the Persons take *will* ; as, *I shall see* ; *thou wilt oblige* ; *he will give Thanks*.—Observe, that the Future of the Indicative, signifying bare Event, has also *shall* in the second Person ; as, *shalt thou see ? shalt thou not see ?*

The Perfect of the Indicative expresses an Action past and done ; as, *I have supped*, and it is now done.—This is called the *Perfect Definite*. The *Perfect Indefinite* signifies a past and finished Action, but does not clearly mark the Time when it was done ; as, *I din'd*, *I went*, *I wrote*.

The Pluperfect Tense signifies some past Action, which was finished before the Time it refers to ; as, *I had supped when he entered*.

NOTE, *Come*, *gone*, *risen*, *sit*, *fallen*, *grown*, *withered*, and such like Intransitive Verbs, have frequently the Passive Signs *am*, *was*, &c. instead of *have* and

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1 am-arem,	1 I might, could, would, or should love.
	2 am-ares,	2 Thou mightest, couldest, &c. love.
	3 am-aret:	3 He might, could, would, &c. love.
Plur.	1 am-aremus,	1 We might, could, would, &c. love.
	2 am-aretis,	2 Ye might, could, would, &c. love.
	3 am-arent.	3 They might, could, would, &c. love.

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

The Imperfect Subjunctive, with Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. is englished like the Imperfect of the Indicative; as, *cum non audirem*, seeing I did not hear.——It is also englished by the Participle in *ing*, with *was*, *were*; as, *dum scriberem literas*, while I was writing Letters.——When the Imperfect of the Subjunctive is englished by the Signs *would*, *could*, *should*, it sometimes has the Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. and sometimes wants them; as, *curarem*, I would take care; *oravit ut venirem*, he begged that I would come.

The

and *had* in the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses; as, *I am come*, for *I have come*. *I was come*, for *I had come*.

The Future of the Subjunctive implies a Future Time, and signifies an Action which shall be done or ended before another Thing which is to happen; as, *when I shall have supped, you shall read*.

NOTE, That *to*, the Sign of the Present of the Infinitive, is generally omitted after *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and also after *must*, *bid*, *dare*, *let*, *help*, and *make*.

There are two Numbers, as we said before, *Singular* and *Plural*.

The *Singular* signifies one Thing; as, *a Man*.

The *Plural* signifies more than one; as, *Children*.

As Verbs signify Action, they must necessarily have Persons, by whom these Actions may be done or suffered: There are commonly reckoned three such Persons, the *First*, *Second*, and *Third*. And we must observe, that they have these Persons in the *Plural* Number as well as in the *Singular*. *I*, only, is reckoned the first Person *Singular*: *Thou* or *you* the second Person *Singular*: *He*, and all other Substantive Nouns, are said to be in the third Person *Singular*; as, *I can say*, *the Pen writes*, as well as *he writes*.——In the same Manner, only *we* is of the first Person *Plural*: *You* and *ye* the second Person *Plural*: *They*, and all other Substantives in the *Plural* Number, are reckoned to be in the third Person *Plural*.——These Observations may be applied to the Persons of the Latin Verbs, *ego*, *tu*, *ille*; *nos*, *vos*, *illi*.

The Present Tense in English is the Verb itself; as, *love*. The Imperfect is commonly formed by adding *ed*; as, *loved*. All the other Tenses of the English Verb, both Active and Passive, are made up of the helping Verbs, *have*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, as will appear in the Conjugations.

I

The

66 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

		The Perfect.	
Sing.	1 am-averim,	1	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	2 am-averis,	2	<i>Thou mayst have loved,</i>
	3 am-averit :	3	<i>He may have loved :</i>
Plur.	1 am-averimus,	1	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	2 am-averitis,	2	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
	3 am-averint.	3	<i>They may have loved.</i>

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

The Perfect of the Subjunctive is very often englished like the Present and Imperfect of the Subjunctive ; as, *ut sic dixerim*, that I may speak so ; *libenter audiverim*, I would gladly hear. — The Perfect of the Subjunctive, with Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. is englished like the Perfect Indefinite of the Indicative ; as, *licet quæsierim te heri*, tho' I sought for thee Yesterday. Without a Conjunction, the Sign is *might* ; as, *erraverim fortasse*, perhaps I might be in an Error. — The Perfect of the Subjunctive, with Conjunctions, &c. is also englished like the Perfect Definite of the Indicative ; as, *etiamsi fecerim periculum*, tho' I have made Trial. — This Tense, after *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, may be sometimes englished as the Preter-pluperfect ; as, *quasi affuerim*, as if I had been present. — This Tense is sometimes englished *should have* ; as, *tunc ego nequicquam Capitolium servaverim*, then I should have saved the Capitol in vain.

The

The second Person of the Present of the Indicative, and the second Person of the Imperfect, are formed by adding *est* ; as, *thou lovest*, *thou lovedst* ; the third Person Singular of the Present of the Indicative ends in *eth* or *s* ; as, *he burneth*, or *he burns*. Through all the other Persons the Verb admits of no Change ; as, *I burn*, *we burn*, *ye burn*, *they burn* ; *I burned*, *we burned*, *ye burned*, *they burned*.

Instead of *eth*, in the third Person Singular, we commonly use *s* ; as, for *he loveth*, we write *he loves*. — In the second Person of the helping Verbs, *will* and *shall*, we say *wilt* and *shalt*. — The helping Verbs *will* and *shall*, *may*, *can*, never take the Termination *eth* in the third Person, for we never say, *he willeth*, *he canneth* fight.

NOTE, the Terminations *est* and *eth*, are sometimes omitted after the Conjunctions *if*, *that*, *although*, *whether* ; as, *if the Sense require it*, for, *if the Sense requireth*, or *requires it*. *He will dare*, *tho' he die for it* ; that is, *tho' he dieth*, or *dies for it*. — All the Tenses of the Active Verb, when we would express the Continuance of an Action, or that a Thing is now doing, may be englished by the Verb *am*, and the Active Participle ; as, *I am burning*, that is, *I burn*. *I was burning*, that is, *I burned*.

The

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	am-avifsem,	1	I might, could, &c. have or had loved,
	2	am-aviffes,	2	Thou mightest, &c. have or had loved,
	3	am-aviffet :	3	He might, &c. have or had loved :
Plur.	1	am-aviffemus,	1	We might, &c. have or had loved,
	2	am-aviffetis,	2	Ye might, &c. have or had loved,
	3	am-aviffent.	3	They might, &c. have or had loved.

The Future.

Sing.	1	am-avero,	1	I shall have loved,
	2	am-averis,	2	Thou shalt have loved,
	3	am-averit :	3	He shall have loved :
Plur.	1	am-averimus,	1	We shall have loved,
	2	am-averitis,	2	Ye shall have loved,
	3	am-averint.	3	They shall have loved.

The Plu-perfect of the Subjunctive, with Conjunctions, Indefinites, &c. is englished as the Pluperfect of the Indicative ; as, *quia accepiffem beneficium*, because I had received a Kindness. — *Venio, abeo, curro*, and fuch Neuter Verbs, take the Signs *was, wert, were* ; as, *quum ille abiviffet antea*, when he was gone away before. — The Plu-perfect of the Subjunctive is fometimes englished by *should* ; as, *imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperaviffet sese effe facturo*, he might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded (should command) they would do. — The Future in *rus*, with *effem*, is fometimes ufed instead of the Plu-perfect of the Subjunctive ; in this Cafe the Signs are *should* or *would* ; as, *gaudebam quod vifurus effem eum*, I was glad that I should fee him.

The

The Verbs *do, will, fhall, may, can*, with their Imperfects, *did, would, fhould, might, could*, are in English called *helping Verbs*, becaufe they are put before other Verbs to exprefs the different Times and Manner of their Signification. — When they are put before other Verbs, or before *muft*, they never admit the Preposition *to* after them ; as, *I do order you ; I muft be gone*. But we ufe *to* after *ought* ; as, *I ought to have gone*. — The Preposition *to*, is alfo left out after thefe Verbs, *bid, dare, let, make* ; as, *we dare not refufe. I will not let you go, &c.*

Thefe helping Verbs, are the only defective Verbs in English ; having no more but the Prefent and Imperfect Tenses : They have no Participles, neither do they admit of any helping Verb before them, except *do* and *will*, which are fometimes found thro' all the Tenses, having the Participles *doing, done, willing, willed* ; and admitting the helping Verbs to exprefs their different Tenses or Times.

When the helping Verb is put before another Verb, the helping Verb changes its ending, and not the other Verb ; as, *I do burn, thou doft burn, he doth*

68 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

The Present.

Sing.	2	am-a <i>vel</i> am-ato,	2	Love thou or do thou love,
	3	am-ato :	3	Let him love :
Plur.	2	am-ate <i>vel</i> am-atote,	2	Love ye or do ye love,
	3	am-anto.	3	Let them love.

The INFINITIVE Mood.

Pres.	am-are.	To love.
Perf.	am-avisse.	To have or had loved.
Fut.	am-aturum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.	To be about to love.

The PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	am-ans.	Loving.
Fut.	am-aturus, -a, -um.	About to love.

The GERUNDS.

Nom.	am-andum,	Loving.
Gen.	am-andi,	Of loving.
Dat.	am-ando,	To loving.
Acc.	am-andum,	Loving.
Abl.	amando.	From, in, or by loving.

The SUPINES.

1	am-atum.	To love.
2	am-atu.	To love or to be loved.

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

When the Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it, it is commonly englished as the Indicative, the Particle *that* being sometimes writ before the Infinitive in English, but oftner understood ; as, *gaudeo te valere*, I am glad that you are well.—But then we must observe, that the very same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently translated, according as the Verb before the Infinitive varies or changes its Tenses.

Examples

doth burn.———*Do* expresses the Present Time more distinctly and fully ; as, *I do love* ; which is stronger than *I love* : We make use of *do*, when we deny a Thing to be so or so ; as, *I do not love him*. We often use *did* in the Imperfect, for the same Reason ; as, *I did love* ; *I did not love*.

NOTE 1. That *shall*, in the first Person Singular, and in the first Plural, signifies just that some future Action will be, and no more ; as, *I shall dance* ; *we shall ride*.———*Will*, in these first Persons, promises or threatens ; as, *I will love* ; *I will that you do such a Thing*. *Shall*, in the second and third Persons, promises and threatens, but *will* barely foretels.———NOTE 2. That all such English Verbs as signify an Action, which does not pass from the Person that acts to another, may be englished with the Passive Signs ; as, *I am grieved*, or *I grieve* ; *I rejoice*, or *I am rejoiced*. The English Verb *to go*, may also be englished passively in the Present and Future Tenses ; as, *I go*, or *I am gone* ; *I will go*, or *I will be gone*.

Examples in the Present of the Infinitive.

If the Verb before the Present of the Infinitive be of the Present or Future Tense, the Infinitive is englished like the Present Tense of the Indicative; as, *dicit me scribere*, he says that I write, or am writing; *dicet me scribere*, he shall say that I write, or am writing.——But when the preceeding Verb is of the Perfect, Imperfect, or Plu-perfect, the Present of the Infinitive is englished like the Imperfect of the Indicative; as, *dixit me scribere*, he said that I wrote or was writing.

Perfect of the Infinitive.

When the preceeding Verb is of the Present or Future Tense, the Perfect of the Infinitive is englished as the Imperfect of the Indicative; as, *dicit me scripsisse*, he says that I wrote or did write; *dicet me scripsisse*, he shall say that I wrote or did write.——When the preceeding Verb is of the Imperfect, Perfect, or Plu-perfect Tense, the Perfect of the Infinitive is englished as the Plu-perfect of the Indicative; as, *dixit me scripsisse*, he said that I had written.

Future of the Infinitive.

When the preceeding Verb is of the Present or Future Tense, the Future of the Infinitive with *esse*, is englished like the Future of the Indicative; as, *dicit me scripturum esse*, he says that I will write; *dicet me scripturum esse*, He shall say that I will write.——When the preceeding Verb is of the Preter-imperfect, Perfect, or Plu-perfect Tense, the Future of the Infinitive, with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; as, *dixit me scripturum esse*, he said that I would write.

That

We shall now, under one View, draw out all the Signs of the English Verb in the Active Voice.

The Sign of the Present Indicative Active is *Love* (the Verb itself) and *est*, *eth*, or *s*; and sometimes, for the greater Force of Expression, *do*, *doest*, *doth*, or *does*.

The Sign of the Imperfect Indicative is *ed*, *edst*, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, *did*, *didst*.

The Sign of the Perfect is *have*, *hast*, *hath*, or *has*, with the Passive Participle after it, which commonly ends in *ed*; as, *I have loved*.

The Sign of the Plu-perfect is *had*, *hadst*, &c. with the Perfect Participle after it; as, *I had loved*.

The Sign of the Future is *shall*, *will*, *shalt*, *wilt*, with the Verb itself; as, *I shall or will love*.

The Present of the Subjunctive Mood has the Signs *may* or *can*, *mayest* or *canst*.

The Sign of the Imperfect is *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, with the Verb itself; as, *I might, could, would, or should love*.

The Sign of the Perfect is *may have*, with the Perfect Participle; as, *I may have loved*.

The Sign of the Plu perfect is *might have* or *had*, with the Perfect Participle; as, *I might have or had loved*.

The Sign of the Future is *shall have*; as, *I shall have loved*.

70 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

That the Passive Voice may be the better understood, we shall here decline the Irregular Verb sum, with the English Verb am or be; since, with the Help of these two Verbs, and the Perfect Participle, the Passive Verbs, in both Languages, are formed.

Sum, fui, esse, To be.

INDICATIVE Mood. SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Present Tense.		Present Tense.	
S Um, <i>I am.</i>	sim,	<i>I may or can be,</i>	
es, <i>Thou art,</i>	sis,	<i>Thou mayst or canst be,</i>	
est : <i>He is :</i>	sit :	<i>He may or can be :</i>	
sumus, <i>We are,</i>	simus,	<i>We may or can be,</i>	
estis, <i>Ye are,</i>	fitis,	<i>Ye may or can be,</i>	
sunt. <i>They are.</i>	sint.	<i>They may or can be.</i>	
Imperfect.		Imperfect.	
eram, <i>I was,</i>	essem,	<i>I might, could, &c. be,</i>	
eras, <i>Thou wast,</i>	esses,	<i>Thou mightest, &c. be,</i>	
erat : <i>He was :</i>	esset :	<i>He might, &c. be :</i>	
eramus, <i>We were,</i>	essemus,	<i>We might, could, &c. be,</i>	
eratis, <i>Ye were,</i>	essetis,	<i>Ye might, could, &c. be,</i>	
erant. <i>They were.</i>	essent.	<i>They might, could, &c. be.</i>	
Perfect.		Perfect.	
fui, <i>I have been,</i>	fuerim,	<i>I may have been,</i>	
fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i>	fueris,	<i>Thou mayst have been,</i>	
fuit : <i>He hath been :</i>	fuerit :	<i>He may have been :</i>	
fuiumus, <i>We have been,</i>	fuerimus,	<i>We may have been,</i>	
fuistis, <i>Ye have been.</i>	fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>	
fuerunt, <i>They have been.</i>	fuerint.	<i>They may have been.</i>	
vel fuere.			
Plu-perfect.		Plu-perfect.	
fueram, <i>I had been,</i>	fuissem,	<i>I might, &c. have or had been,</i>	
fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i>	fuisesses,	<i>Thou mightest have or had been.</i>	
fuerat : <i>He had been :</i>	fuisset :	<i>He might have or had been :</i>	
fueramus, <i>We had been,</i>	fuissemus,	<i>We might have or had been,</i>	
fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i>	fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have or had been,</i>	
fuerant. <i>They had been.</i>	fuisissent.	<i>They might have or had been.</i>	

Future.

NOTE, The Verb *am* or *be* has another Present of the Indicative; viz. *be, thou be'st, he be, we be, ye be, they be*; also another Imperfect in the Indicative; as, *I were, thou wert, he were; we were, ye were, they were*. These two Tenses are, for the most Part, used after the Conjunctions *if, tho', whether*; as, *if I be then alive.*

OF CONJUGATION

71

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.		Future.	
ero,	<i>I shall or will be,</i>	fuero,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
eris,	<i>Thou shalt or wilt be,</i>	fuero,	<i>Thou shalt have been,</i>
erit :	<i>He shall or will be :</i>	fuero :	<i>He shall have been :</i>
erimus,	<i>We shall or will be,</i>	fuero,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
eritis,	<i>Ye shall or will be,</i>	fuero,	<i>Ye shall have been,</i>
erunt.	<i>They shall or will be.</i>	fuero.	<i>They shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE Mood.

INFINITIVE Mood.

Present.		Pres. esse, To be.	
es vel esto,	<i>Be thou,</i>	Perf. fuisse,	<i>To have or had been.</i>
esto :	<i>Let him be :</i>	Fut. futurum	<i>To be about to</i>
esse vel estote,	<i>Be ye,</i>	esse vel fuisse.	<i>be.</i>
sunto.	<i>Let them be.</i>		

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futurus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

The PASSIVE VOICE.

How to form this Voice from the Active, in all Verbs, hath been shown above.

Amor, amatus sum vel fui, amari.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Present.

Sing.	1	am-or,	1	<i>I am loved,</i>
	2	am-aris vel am-are,	2	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
	3	am-atur :	3	<i>He is loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-amur,	1	<i>We are loved,</i>
	2	am-amini,	2	<i>Ye are loved,</i>
	3	am-antur.	3	<i>They are loved.</i>

The

The Signs of the PASSIVE VOICE are, in the Present, *am, art, is, are, be, be'st,* with the Passive Participle; as, *I am loved, &c.*—The Signs of the Imperfect are *was, wa's, wert, were,* with the Passive Participle, as, *I was loved.*—The Sign of the Perfect is *have been;* as, *I have been loved.*—Of the Plu-perfect, *had been;* as, *I had been loved.*—Of the Future, *shall be;* as, *I shall be loved.*—Of the Present of the Subjunctive, *may or can be;* as, *I may or can be loved.*—Of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, *might, could, would, or should be;* as, *I might, could, &c. be loved.*—Of the Perfect, *may have been;* as, *I may have been loved.*—Of the Plu-perfect, *might, could, &c. have or had been;* as, *I might, could, &c. have or had been loved.*—The Future is *shall have been;* as, *I shall have been loved.*

72 *RUDIMENTS of the* LATIN TONGUE.

The Imperfect.			
Sing.	{	1 am-abar,	1 <i>I was loved,</i>
		2 am-abaris <i>vel</i> -abare,	2 <i>Thou wast (wert) loved,</i>
		3 am-abatur :	3 <i>He was loved :</i>
Plur.	{	1 am-abamur,	1 <i>We were loved,</i>
		2 am-abamini,	2 <i>Ye were loved,</i>
		3 am-abantur.	3 <i>They were loved.</i>

The Perfect.			
Sing.	{	1 am-atus sum <i>vel</i> fui,	1 <i>I have been loved,</i>
		2 am-atus es <i>vel</i> fuisti,	2 <i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
		3 am-atus est <i>vel</i> fuit :	3 <i>He hath been loved :</i>
Plur.	{	1 am-ati sumus <i>vel</i> fuimus,	1 <i>We have been loved,</i>
		2 am-ati estis <i>vel</i> fuistis,	2 <i>Ye have been loved,</i>
		3 am-ati sunt, fuerunt <i>vel</i> fuere.	3 <i>They have been loved.</i>

The Plu-perfect.			
Sing.	{	1 am-atus eram <i>vel</i> fueram,	1 <i>I had been loved,</i>
		2 am-atus eras <i>vel</i> fueras,	2 <i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
		3 am-atus erat <i>vel</i> fuerat :	3 <i>He had been loved :</i>
Plur.	{	1 am-ati eramus <i>vel</i> fueramus,	1 <i>We had been loved,</i>
		2 am-ati eratis <i>vel</i> fueratis,	2 <i>Ye had been loved,</i>
		3 am-ati erant <i>vel</i> fuerant.	3 <i>They had been loved.</i>

The Future.			
Sing.	{	1 am-abor,	1 <i>I shall or will be loved,</i>
		2 am-aberis <i>vel</i> -abere,	2 <i>Thou shalt or wilt be loved,</i>
		3 am-abitur :	3 <i>He shall or will be loved :</i>
Plur.	{	1 am-abimur,	1 <i>We shall or will be loved,</i>
		2 am-abimini,	2 <i>Ye shall or will be loved,</i>
		3 am-abuntur.	3 <i>They shall or will be loved.</i>

REMARKS upon the LATIN TENSES.

The Plu-perfect of the Indicative, and Plu-perfect of the Subjunctive Passive, made up with *eram* and *essem*, are englished by *was*, *wast*, *were*, *wert*, &c. as, *labor finitus erat*, the Work was finished.——The Perfect of the Indicative, and Perfect of the Subjunctive Passive, made up with *sum* or *sim*, are often englished by *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, instead of *have been*; as, *vulneratus sum*, I am wounded.——When the Perfect is made up with *fui*, it is frequently englished by *was*, *wast*, *were*, *wert*, &c. as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken.——The Perfect of the Subjunctive Passive, signifying a Thing but just now done, takes *be* in the English, instead of *have been*; as, *fortasse opus finitum sit*, perhaps the Work may be finished.

The

OF CONJUGATION.

73

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

The Present.

Sing.	1	am-er,	1	<i>I may or can be loved;</i>
	2	am-eris <i>vel</i> -ere,	2	<i>Thou mayst or canst be loved,</i>
	3	am-etur :	3	<i>He may or can be loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-emur,	1	<i>We may or can be loved,</i>
	2	am-emi-	2	<i>Ye may or can be loved,</i>
	3	am-entur.	3	<i>They may or can be loved.</i>

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1	am arer,	1	<i>I might, could, &c. be loved,</i>
	2	am-areris <i>vel</i> -arere,	2	<i>Thou mightest, &c. be loved,</i>
	3	am-aretur :	3	<i>He might, &c. be loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-aremur,	1	<i>We might, &c. be loved,</i>
	2	am-aremini,	2	<i>Ye might, &c. be loved,</i>
	3	am-arentur.	3	<i>They might, &c. be loved.</i>

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	am-atus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	1	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
	2	am-atus sis <i>vel</i> fueris,	2	<i>Thou mayst have been loved,</i>
	3	am-atus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit :	3	<i>He may have been loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-ati simus <i>vel</i> fuerimus,	1	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
	2	am-ati sitis <i>vel</i> fueritis,	2	<i>Ye may have been loved,</i>
	3	am-ati sint <i>vel</i> fuerint:	3	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	am-atus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset,	1	<i>I might, &c. have or had been loved,</i>
	2	am-atus esses <i>vel</i> fuissetis,	2	<i>Thou mightest have or had been loved,</i>
	3	am-atus esset <i>vel</i> fuisset :	3	<i>He might, &c. have or had been loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-ati essemus <i>vel</i> fuissetimus,	1	<i>We might, &c. have or had been loved,</i>
	2	am-ati essetis <i>vel</i> fuissetis,	2	<i>Ye might, &c. have or had been loved,</i>
	3	am-ati essent <i>vel</i> fuissent.	3	<i>They might, &c. have or had been loved.</i>

The Future.

Sing.	1	am-atus fuero,	1	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
	2	am-atus fueris,	2	<i>Thou shalt have been loved,</i>
	3	am-atus fuerit :	3	<i>He shall have been loved :</i>
Plur.	1	am-ati fuerimus,	1	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
	2	am-ati fueritis,	2	<i>Ye shall have been loved,</i>
	3	am-ati fuerint.	3	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

The Present.

Sing.	2	am-are <i>vel</i> am-ator,	2	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
	3	am-ator :	3	<i>Let him be loved :</i>
	2	am-amin),	2	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
Plur.	3	am-antor.	3	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

K

The

74 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The INFINITIVE Mood.

<i>Pres.</i> am-ari.	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> am-atum esse vel fuisse.	<i>To have or had been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> am-atum iri.	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

The PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> am-atus,	-a, -um.	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> am-andus,	-a, -um.	<i>To be loved.</i>

The Second CONJUGATION.

The ACTIVE VOICE.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere. *To teach.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3.
<i>Pr.</i>	D oc-co,	-es,	-et :	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
<i>Im.</i>	doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit :	-uimus,	-uistis,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-uerunt,} \\ \text{-uere.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Plu.</i>	docueram,	-ueras,	-uerat :	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit :	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i>	doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat :	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Im.</i>	doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret :	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Per.</i>	doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	doc-uisssem,	-uissfes,	-uissfet :	-uisssemus,	-uissfetis,	-uissfent.
<i>Fut.</i>	doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

<i>Pres.</i> doc-	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-e,} \\ \text{-eto,} \end{array} \right.$	eto :	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ete,} \\ \text{-etote,} \end{array} \right.$	-ento.
-------------------	---	-------	---	--------

INFINITIVE.	SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.
<i>Pres.</i> doc-ere.	1. doc-tum.	<i>Pr.</i> doc-ens.	doc-endum.
<i>Perf.</i> doc-uisse.	2. doc-tu.	<i>Fut.</i> doc-turus.	doc-endi.
<i>Fut.</i> doc-turum esse vel fuisse.			doc-endo.

The

Of CONJUGATION.

75

The PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, doceri. *To be taught.*

The INDICATIVE Mood,

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. doc-eor, { -eris, -etur: -emur, -emini, -entur.
 { -ere,

Im. doc-ebam, { -ebaris, -ebatur: -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
 { -ebare,

Per. doc-tus sum *vel* fui, &c.

Plu. doc-tus eram *vel* fueram, &c.

Fut. doc-ebor, { -eberis, -ebitur: -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.
 { -ebere,

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. doc-ear, { -earis, -eatur: -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
 { -eare,

Im. doc-erer, { -ereis, -eretur: -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
 { -erere,

Per. doc-tus sim *vel* fuerim, &c.

Plu. doc-tus essem *vel* fuisset, &c.

Fut. doc-tus fuero, &c.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Pres. doc- { -ere, -etor: -emini, -entor.
 { -etor,

INFINITIVE.

Pres. doc-eri.

Perf. doc-tum esse *vel* fuisse.

Fut. doc-tum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Per. doc-tus, -a, -um.

Fut. doc-endus, -a, -um.

The Third CONJUGATION.

The ACTIVE VOICE.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere. *To read.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. **L** ¹E-go, ²-is, ³-it: ¹-imus, ²-itis, ³-unt.

Im. leg-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. leg-i, -isti, -it: -imus, -istis, -erunt, -ere.

Plu. leg eram, -eras, -erat: -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Fut. leg-am, -es, et: -emus, -etis, -ent.

The

76 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> leg-am,	-as,	-at :	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Im.</i> leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret :	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Per.</i> leg-erim,	-eris,	-erit :	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i> leg-issem,	-isses,	-isset :	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> leg-ero,	-eris,	-erit :	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

<i>Pres.</i> leg-	{ -e,	-ito :	{ -ite,	-unto.
	-ito,		-itote,	

INFINITIVE.	SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.
<i>Pres.</i> leg-ere.	1. lec-tum.	<i>Pr.</i> leg-ens.	leg-endum.
<i>Perf.</i> leg-isse.	2. lec-tu.	<i>Fut.</i> lec-turus.	leg-endi.
<i>Fut.</i> lec-turum esse vel fuisse.			leg-endo.

The PASSIVE VOICE.

Legor, lectus, legi. *To be read.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> leg-or,	{ -eris,	-itur :	-imur, -imini, -untur.
	-ere,		
<i>Imp.</i> leg-ebar,	{ -ebaris,	-ebatur :	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
	-ebare,		
<i>Per.</i> lec-tus sum vel fui, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> lec-tus eram vel fueram, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> leg-ar,	{ -eris,	-etur :	-emur, -emini, -entur.
	-ere,		

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> leg-ar,	{ -aris,	-atur :	-amur, -amini, -antur.
	-are,		
<i>Imp.</i> leg-erer,	{ -ereris,	-eretur :	-eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
	-erere,		
<i>Per.</i> lec-tus sim vel fuerim, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> lec-tus essem vel fuisset, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> lec-tus fuero, &c.			

The

Of CONJUGATION. 77

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Pres. Leg. { -ere, -itor : -imini, -untor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. leg-i.
Perf. lec-tum esse *vel* fuisse.
Fut. lec-tum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. lec-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. leg-endus, -a, -um.

The Fourth CONJUGATION.

The ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire. To hear.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-io,	-is,	-it :	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
<i>Im.</i>	aud-iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat :	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i>	aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit :	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	{ -iverunt, -ivere.
<i>Plu.</i>	aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat :	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet :	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. aud-iam, -ias, -iat : -iamus, -iatis, -iant.
Im. aud-irem, -ires, -iret : -iremus, -iretis, -irent.
Per. aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit : -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.
Plu. aud-ivissem, -ivisses, -ivisset : -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissent.
Fut. aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit : -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Pres. aud- { -i, -ito, ito : { -ite, -itote, -iunto.

INFINITIVE.	SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.	GERUNDS.
<i>Pr.</i> aud-ire.	1. aud-itum.	<i>Pr.</i> aud-iens.	aud-iendum.
<i>Per.</i> aud-ivisse.	2. aud-itu.	<i>Fut.</i> aud-iturus.	aud-iendi.
<i>Fut.</i> aud-iturum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.			aud-iendo.

The

78 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, auditus, audiri. *To be heard.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Pr. aud-ior, { -iris, -itur: -imur, -imini, -iuntur.
 { -ire,

Im. aud-iebar, { -iebaris, -iebatur: -iebamur, -iebamini, -iebantur.
 { -iebare,

Per. aud-itus sum *vel* fui, &c.

Plu. aud-itus eram *vel* fueram, &c.

Fut. aud-iar, { -ieris, -ietur: -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.
 { -iere,

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. aud-iar, { -iaris, -iatur: -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
 { -iare,

Im. aud-irer, { -ireris, -iretur: -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
 { -irere,

Per. aud-itus sim *vel* fuerim, &c.

Plu. aud-itus essem *vel* fuisset, &c.

Fut. aud-itus fuero, &c.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Pres. aud- { -ire, -itor: -imini, -iuntor.
 { -itor,

INFINITIVE.

Pres. aud-iri.

Perf. aud-itum esse *vel* fuisse.

Fut. auditum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Per. aud-itus, -a, -um.

Fut. aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Before

Of CONJUGATION. 79

Before we advance to the Conjugation of Irregular Verbs, it seems proper here, to give a full View of all the various Perfects and Supines that are to be met with in the four regular Conjugations.—But let none object, that drawing out the Perfects and Supines in this Place, lays a Boy under the Necessity of learning them immediately after he can repeat audio; it may be done sooner or later, as the Master thinks proper.

Of the RULES for forming the PRETERITES and SUPINES of Regular Verbs.

Q. HOW are the Rules for forming the Preterites and Supines of Regular Verbs divided?

A. Into *General* and *Special*.

Q. What are the General?

A. Such as have equally a Reference to all Conjugations.

Q. What are the Special?

A. Such as are peculiar to every Conjugation by itself.

Q. How many General Rules are there, which have a Reference to all Regular Verbs?

A. They are six in Number.

GENERAL RULES concerning the Preterites and Supines of Regular Verbs.

I. Compound Verbs generally form the Preterite and Supine like the simple Verb of which they are compounded; as, *redamo*, *avi*, *-atum*, like the simple Verb *amo*, has *avi*, *-atum*.—There are some Exceptions to this Rule, to be afterwards explained.

II. When simple Verbs have the first Syllable of the Preterite doubled, the Compounds of such Verbs lose that Syllable; as, *pepulo*, *pepuli*; *repello*, *repuli*.—Except from this Rule,

Præcurro, *præcucurri*, *to run before.*

Repungo, *repupugi*, *to prick again.*

Also the Compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*; as,

Addo, *addidi*, *to add.*

Asto, *astiti*, *to stand by.*

Edisco, *edidici*, *to learn by heart.*

Deposco, *depoposci*, *to demand.*

III. If a Compound Verb is formed from the Simple, by changing *a* into *i*, the Supine of such a Compound must have *e*; as, *perficio*, *perfecti*, *perfectum*, has *e* in the Supine, because it comes from *facio*, by changing *a* into *i*.

Except

80 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Except from this Rule, *displiceo, displicui, displicitum*, which has *i* in the Supine, tho' it comes from the simple Verb *placeo*, by changing *a* into *i*.

Except also, Verbs ending in *do* and *go*; as,

Adigo, adegì, adaçtum, to drive to: from ago.

Recido, recidi, recaçum, to fall back: from cado.

Also the Compounds of the simple Verbs *habeo* and *sapio*; as,
Prohibeo, prohibui, prohibitum, to forbid.
Desipio, (if it has the Supine) requires desipitum, to play the Fool.

These Verbs, which are derived from *salio*, to leap, and *statuo*, to set up, have *u* in the Supine; as,

Insilio, insultum, to leap upon.

Instituo, institutum, to appoint.

IV. When a Verb has *a* in the Present, it must also have *a* in the Supine, tho' the Perfect perhaps may change *a* into another Letter; as, *capio, cepi, captum*, to take; *fallo, fefelli, falsum*, to deceive.

V. Verbs which have no Preterite, always want the Supine; as, *polleo, glisco, ambigo, vergo, ferio*, &c.

VI. In conjugating Verbs, the Present of the Infinitive has always the same Letters with the Present of the Indicative; as, *tollo, sustuli, sublatum, tollere*, to take away.

SPECIAL RULES.

Concerning the First CONJUGATION.

Q. What is the General Rule by which the Preterites and Supines of Verbs in the first Conjugation are formed?

A. Verbs of the first Conjugation have the Preterite in *avi*, and the Supine in *atum*; as, *amo, amavi, amatum*, to love.

Q. What are the Exceptions?

Do,	dedi,	datum,	to give.
Sto,	steti,	statum,	to stand.
Lavo,	lavi,	lautum, lotum, lavatum,	to wash.
Poto,	potavi,	potum or potatum,	to drink.

OBSERVATIONS on the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *do*, with a Preposition, are almost all of the third Conjugation, and take *didi* and *ditum*; except *venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *perundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give Surety; which are declined like the simple Verb *do*.

The Compounds of *sto* have *stiti, stitum*, oftner *statum*; as, *asto, astiti, astitum*, oftner *astatum*, to stand by.

Juv.

Juvo,	juvi,	jutum,	to help.
Cubo,	cubui,	cubitum,	to ly.
Domo,	domui,	domitum,	to tame.
Sono,	sonui,	sonitum,	to sound.
Tono,	tonui,	tonitum,	to thunder.
Veto,	vetui,	vetitum,	to forbid.
Crepe,	crepui,	crepitum,	to make a Noise.
Mico,	micui,	_____	to glitter.
Emico,	emicui,	emica ^{tu} m,	to shine forth.
Dimico,	-avi, <i>seldom</i> -ui,	-atum,	to fight.
Plico,	_____	_____	to fold.
Frico,	fricui,	frictum,	to rub.
Seco,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
Neco,	-avi, <i>sometimes</i> -ui,	-atum,	to kill.
Labo,	_____	_____	to fail or faint.
Nexo,	_____	_____	to bind.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *cubo*, without *m* before *bo*, are of the first Conjugation; as, *accubo*, -ui, -itum, -are, to sit nigh; but with *m* before *bo*, they are of the third Conjugation; as, *incumbo*, -ui, -itum, -ere, to ly upon.

Plico, compounded with a Noun, or the Prepositions *sub* and *re*, has only *avi* and *atum*; as, *multiplico*, -avi, -atum, to multiply; *supplico*, -avi, -atum, to entreat humbly; *replico*, -avi, -atum, to unfold, to reply; but compounded with the rest of the Prepositions, it has either *avi*, *atum*, or *ui*, *itum*; as, *applico*, -avi, -atum, or -ui, -itum, to join or apply.

Eneco has *enectum*; *interneco*, *internecatum*, or *internectum*.

The Second CONJUGATION.

Q. What is the General Rule by which Verbs of the second Conjugation form the Preterite and Supine?

A. Verbs of the second Conjugation have *ui* in the Preterite, and *itum* in the Supine; as, *habeo*, *habui*, *habitu*m, to have; *taceo*, *tacui*, *tacitu*m, to be silent; *lateo*, -ui, -itum, to lye hid.

Q. What are the Exceptions?

Doceo,	docui,	doctum,	to teach.
Teneo,	tenui,	tentum,	to hold.
Misceo,	miscui,	mistum or mixtum,	to mix.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *taceo* and *lateo* want the Supine; as, *conticeo*, -ui, to keep Silence; *deliteo*, -ui, to lye hid.

Attineo, *pertineo*, and for the most Part *abstineo*, want the Supine.

L

Censeo,

82 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Censeo,	cenſui,	cenſum,	to think or judge.
Torreo,	torrui,	toſtum,	to roaſt.
Sorbeo,	forbui,	ſorptum,	to ſup.
Splendeo,	ſplendui,	—	to ſhine.
Madeo,	madui,	—	to be wet or moiſt.
Timeo,	timui,	—	to fear.
Sileo,	ſilui,	—	to conceal.
Arceo,	arcui,	—	to drive away.
Sedeo,	fedi,	ſeſſum,	to ſit.
Prandeo,	prandi,	pranſum,	to dine.
Video,	vidi,	viſum,	to ſee.
Strideo,	ſtridi,	—	to make a Noiſe.
Mordeo,	momordi,	morſum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pependi,	penſum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	ſpopondi,	ſponſum,	to promiſe or betroth.
Tondeo,	totondi,	tonſum,	to clip.
Moveo,	movi,	motum,	to move.
Foveo,	fovi,	foſtum,	to cheriſh.
Voveo,	vovi,	votum,	to vow or wiſh.
Faveo,	favi,	faſtum,	to favour.
Caveo,	cavi,	cautum,	to beware of.
Paveo,	pavi,	—	to be afraid.
Ferveo,	ferbui,	—	to boil.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

All Neuter Verbs of this Conjugation, which have *ui* in the Preterite, want the Supine; as, *egeo*, -*ui*, to want; except the following Verbs, which have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general Rule, *valeo*, *placeo*, *liceo*, *pareo*, *jaceo*, *caleo*, *noceo*, *doleo*, *coaleo*, *mereo*.

We never read *arcitum*; but all the Compounds of this Verb keep the Supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitum*, to exerciſe.

Theſe ſix Compounds of *ſedeo*, want the Supine, *deſideo*, *diſſideo*, *perſideo*, *præſideo*, *reſideo*, *ſubſideo*.

The Compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *tondeo*, &c. loſe the Reduplication; as, *remordeo*, -*di*, to bite again; *impendo*, *detondeo*, &c.

Active Verbs in *veo*, have -*vi*, -*tum*; Neuters in *veo*, want the Supine.

Conniveo,

Conniveo,	-vi or -xi,	—	to wink.
Deleo,	delevi,	deletum,	to blot out.
Compleo,	complevi,	completum,	to fill.
Fleo,	flevi,	fletum,	to weep.
Neo,	nevi,	netum,	to spin.
Vieo,	vievi,	vietum,	to hoop a Vessel.
Cieo,	—	citum,	to stir up, to rouse.
Oleo,	olui,	-itum, of old -evi,	to smell.
Suadeo,	suasi,	suasum, [-etum,	to advise.
Rideo,	rifi,	risum,	to laugh.
Maneo,	mansi,	mansum,	to stay.
Hæreo,	hæsi,	hæsum,	to stick.
Ardeo,	arfi,	arsum,	to burn.
Tergeo,	terfi,	tersum,	to wipe.
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	to stroak.
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulsum & -ctum,	to milk.
Jubeo,	jussi,	jussum,	to command.
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	to cocker or grant.
Torqueo,	torfi,	tortum,	to throw.
Urgeo,	urfi,	—	to urge or press.
Fulgeo,	fulfi,	—	to shine.
Turgeo,	turfi,	—	to swell.
Algeo,	alfi,	—	to be cold.
Lugeo,	luxi,	—	to mourn.
Luceo,	luxi,	—	to give light.
Frigeo,	frixi,	—	to be cold.
Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	to encrease.
Lacteo,	—	—	to suck Milk.
Liveo,	—	—	to be black and blue.
Scateo,	—	—	to flow out, to abound.
Renideo,	—	—	to shine, to smile.
Mæreo,	—	—	to be sorrowful.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

We have also the Verb *cio*, and its Compounds *accio*, &c. in the fourth Conjugation.

The Compounds of *oleo*, englished as the simple Verb, have *ui* and *itum*; as, *oboleo*, -ui, -itum, to smell; but those of a different Signification, take *evi*, *etum*; as, *exoleo*, -evi, -etum, to fade; except *aboleo*, -evi, -itum, to abolish; *adoleo*, -evi, -ultum, to grow up.

Aveo,

84 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Aveo,	—	—	<i>to desire.</i>
Polleo,	—	—	<i>to be able.</i>
Flaveo,	—	—	<i>to be yellow.</i>
Denseo,	—	—	<i>to grow thick.</i>
Glabreo,	—	—	<i>to be smooth or bare.</i>

The Third CONJUGATION.

Q. Is there any general Rule which can be applied to Verbs of the third Conjugation?

A. No; they follow under their several Terminations.

CIO.			
Facio,	fecit,	factum,	<i>to make or do.</i>
Jacio,	jeci,	jactum,	<i>to cast or throw.</i>
Aspicio,	aspexi,	aspectum,	<i>to behold.</i>
DIO.			
Fodio,	fodi,	fossam,	<i>to dig.</i>
GIO.			
Fugio,	fugi,	fugitum,	<i>to fly.</i>
PIO.			
Capio,	cepi,	captum,	<i>to take.</i>
Rapio,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to pull or snatch.</i>
Sapio,	sapui,	—	<i>to be wise.</i>
Cupio,	cupivi,	cupitum,	<i>to desire.</i>
RIO.			
Pario,	peperi,	partum or paritum,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
TIO.			
Quatio,	quassi,	quassum,	<i>to shake.</i>
UO, UI, UTUM.			
Acuo,	acui,	acutum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
EXCEP.			
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	<i>to build.</i>
Ruo,	ruir,	ruitum,	<i>to rush or fall.</i>
Metuo,	metui,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
Pluo,	plui,	—	<i>to rain.</i>
Congruo,	congrui,	—	<i>to agree.</i>

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *specio* and *lacio*, have *exi* and *ectum*; as, *inspicio*, -*exi*, -*ectum*, to look upon; *allicio*, -*exi*, -*ectum*, to allure.—Except *elicio*, -*ui*, -*itum*, to draw, or fetch out.

The Compounds of *pario* are of the fourth Conjugation; as, *comperio*, -*ri*, -*tum*, -*ire*, to know a Thing for certain.

The Compounds of *quatio* end in *utio*, and have *cussi*, *cussum*; as, *excutio*, &c. to shake out.

The Compounds of *ruo* take *utum* short in the Supine; as, *diruo*, -*ui*, -*utum*, to overthrow.—Note, *Corruo* and *irruo* have no Supine.

Ingruo,

Of CONJUGATION. 85

Ingruo,	ingrui,	—	<i>to assail.</i>
Annuo,	annui,	—	<i>to consent.</i>
Abnuo,	abnui,	—	<i>to refuse.</i>
Innuo,	innui,	—	<i>to nod.</i>
Renuo,	renui,	—	<i>to deny.</i>
Respuo,	respui,	—	<i>to reject.</i>

BO, BI, TUM.

Bibo,	bibi,	bibitum,	<i>to drink.</i>
-------	-------	----------	------------------

EXCEP.

Scabo,	scabi,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
Lambo,	lambi,	—	<i>to lick.</i>
Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>to write.</i>
Nubo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>to be married.</i>

CO, XI, CTUM.

Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>to say.</i>
-------	-------	---------	----------------

EXCEP.

Vinco,	vici,	vitum,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Parco,	peperci, parsi,	parcitum, parsum,	<i>to spare.</i>
Ico,	ici,	ictum,	<i>to strike.</i>

SCO, VI, TUM.

Cresco,	crevi,	cretum,	<i>to grow.</i>
---------	--------	---------	-----------------

EXCEP.

Palco,	pavi,	pastum,	<i>to feed.</i>
Disco,	didici,	—	<i>to learn.</i>
Posco,	poposci,	—	<i>to demand.</i>
Compesco,	compescui,	—	<i>to stop.</i>
Dispesco,	dispecui,	—	<i>to separate.</i>
Glisco,	—	—	<i>to grow.</i>

DO, DI, SUM.

Cudo,	cudi,	cusum,	<i>to forge.</i>
-------	-------	--------	------------------

EXCEP.

Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Rado,	rafi,	rafum,	<i>to shave.</i>
Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>to close.</i>
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to clap Hands for Joy.</i>
Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	<i>to play.</i>
Trudo,	trufi,	trufum,	<i>to thrust.</i>
Lædo,	læfi,	læsum,	<i>to hurt.</i>
Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
Vado,	vasi,	vasum,	<i>to go.</i>
Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	<i>to yield.</i>
Pando,	pandi,	passum and pansum,	<i>to open.</i>
Fundo,	fudi,	fusum,	<i>to pour forth.</i>

Of the COMPOUNDS.

Inceptive Verbs in *sco* often want the Perfect and Supine ; as, *madefco*, to become moist.—But Verbs of this Kind sometimes borrow these Tenses from their Primitives ; as, *ardesco*, *arfi*, *arsum*, to grow hot, from *ardeo*, &c.

Comedo,

86 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Comedo,	-edi,	-esum or -estum,	to eat.
Scindo,	scidi,	scissum,	to cut.
Findo,	fidi,	fissum,	to cleave.
Tundo,	tutudi,	tunsum,	to beat as in a Mortar.
Cado,	cecidī,	casum,	to fall.
Cædo,	cecidī,	cæsum,	to cut or kill.
Tendo,	tetendi,	tensum or tentum,	to stretch out.
Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	to hang or weigh.
Abdo,	abdidi,	abditum,	to hide.
Abcondo,	-di <i>sel.</i> -didi,	abconditum,	to hide.
Strido,	stridi,	—	to crash or creak.
Rudo,	rudi,	—	to bray like an Ass.
Sido,	fidi,	—	to sink down.

GO, XI, CTUM.

Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	to surround, to gird.
--------	--------	----------	-----------------------

EXCEP.

Surgo,	furrexi,	surrectum,	to rise.
Pergo,	perrexi,	perrectum,	to go forward.
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	to bind, to strain.
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	to paint.
Frango,	fregi,	fractum,	to break.
Ago,	egi,	actum,	to do or drive.
Tango,	tetigi,	tactum,	to touch.
Lego,	legi,	lectum,	to read or gather.
Pago,	pepigi,	pactum,	to bargain.
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to spread.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

Except *comedo*, all the Compounds of *edo*, have *di*, *sum*, according to the general Rule; as, *exedo*, to consume.

The Compounds of *tundo* have *tudi*, *tusum*; as, *contundo*, to bruise.

All the Compounds of *cado* want the Supine, except *occido*, *recido*, *incido*, which are pronounced short; as, *occido*, *occidi*, *occisum*, to fall down, to die, &c.

The Compounds of *cædo* change *æ* into *i* long; as, *occido*, *occidi*, *occisum*, to kill.

Most of the Compounds of *tendo*, have *tentum*; yet we write *extensum* or *extentum*, but *ostensum* rather than *ostentum*.

The Compounds of *sido* borrow the Preterite and Supine from *sedeo*; as, *consido*, *confedi*, *confessum*, to settle or sit down.

Three of the Compounds of *lego* have *exi* and *ectum*; *diligo*, *negligo*, *intelligo*.

Three of the Compounds of *ago* want the Supine; *fatago*, *-egi*, to be busy; *prodigo*, *-egi*, to spend riotously; *dego*, *degi*, to dwell.—*Ambigo*, to doubt, wants the Preterite and Supine.

For the old Verb *pago* we use *pacifcor*.

Pungo,

Pungo,	pupugi,	punctum,	to prick.
Pango,	panxi,	paſtum,	to fix, to drive.
Mergo,	merſi,	merſum,	to dip or plunge.
Tergo,	terſi,	terſum,	to wipe or clean.
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	to fix or faſten.
Frigo,	frixi,	-xum or ctum,	to fry.
Vergo,	—	—	to incline.
Clango,	clanxi,	—	to ſound a Trumpet.
Ningo,	ninxi,	—	to ſnow.
Ango,	anxi,	—	to vex or torment.

HO, XI, CTUM.

Traho,	traxi,	tractum,	to draw.
Veho,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.

LO, LUI.

Colo,	colui,	cultum,	to inhabit, to adorn.
Conſulo,	conſului,	conſultum,	to adviſe, to conſult.
Alo,	alui,	alitur or altum,	to nourish.
Molo,	molui,	molitur,	to grind.
Antecello,	antecellui,	—	to excel.
Excello,	excellui,	—	to excel.
Præcello,	præcellui,	—	to excel.
Percello,	perculi,	percuſum,	to overthrow.
Recello,	—	—	to bend back.
Pello,	pepuli,	pulſum,	to thruſt.
Fallo,	feſelli,	faſum,	to deceive.
Vello,	velli or vulſi,	vulſum,	to pull or pinch.
Sallo,	ſalli,	ſaluſum,	to ſalt.
Pſallo,	pſalli,	—	to play on an Inſtrument.
Tollo,	ſuſtuli,	ſublatur,	to take away.

MO, UI, ITUM.

Fremo,	fremui,	fremitur,	to rage or roar.
--------	---------	-----------	------------------

EXCEP.

Demo,	dempſi,	demptum,	to take away.
Promo,	prompſi,	promptum,	to bring out.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *pungo* have *punxi*; as, *compungo*, -xi, -ctum, to ſting; yet we write *repupugi* or *repunxi*, from *repungo*, to prick again.—The Compounds of *pango*, which change *a* into *i*, have *pegi* in the Preterite, from the old Verb *pago*; as, *compingo*, *compegi*, *compacſum*, to put together.

The ſimple Verb *cello* is not in uſe; the Compounds are conjugated as above.

Aſtollo has neither Preterite nor Supine.

Sumo,

88 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Sumo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Como,	compsi,	comptum,	to deck or dress.
Emo,	emi,	emptum,	to buy.
Premo,	pressi,	pressum,	to press.
NO.			
Pono,	posui,	positum,	to put or place.
Gigno,	genui,	genitum,	to beget.
Cano,	cecini,	cantum,	to sing.
Temno,	templi,	temptum,	to despise.
Sperno,	sprevi,	spretum,	to disdain or slight.
Sterno,	stravi,	stratum,	to lay flat or strow.
Sino,	sivi or sii,	situm,	to permit.
Lino,	levi or livi,	litum,	to anoint or daub.
Cerno,	crevi,	cretum,	to see, to decree.
PO, PSI, PTUM.			
Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
EXCEP.			
Strepo,	strepui,	strepitum,	to make a Noise.
Rumpo,	rupi,	ruptum,	to break.
QUO.			
Coquo,	coxi,	coctum,	to boil.
Linquo,	liqui,	—	to leave.
RO.			
Quæro,	quæsi,	quæsitum,	to seek.
Tero,	trivi,	tritum,	to bruise.
Verro,	verri,	versum,	to sweep.
Uro,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Curro,	cucurri,	cursum,	to run.
Gero,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Sero,	sevi,	satum,	to sow.
Fero,	tuli,	latum,	to bring.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *cano* have *cinui*, *centum*; as, *præcino*, *præcinui*, *præcentum*, to sing before.

Cretum is scarcely used, except in the Compounds; as, *decerno*, *decrevi*, *decretum*, to decree.

We never read *lictum*, but in the Compounds; as, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to leave.

The Compounds of *curro* sometimes keep and sometimes lose the Reduplication; as, *accurro*, *accurri* or *accucurri*, &c.

The Compounds of *fero*, signifying to sow or plant, have *sevi*, *situm*; as, *assero*, *assevi*, *assitum*, to sow; those of a different Signification take *serui* and *sertum*; as, *asserō*, *asserui*, *assertum*.
Suffero,

Of CONJUGATION.

89

Suffero,	—	—	to suffer.
Furo,	—	—	to be mad.
SO, SIVI, SITUM.			
Arcesso,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	to send for.
EXCEP.			
Viso,	visi,	—	to visit.
Incesso,	incessi,	—	to attack.
Depso,	depfui,	depstum,	to knead.
Piso,	-fui or si,	-sum, pistum, -itum,	to bake.
TO.			
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	to bow.
Plecto,	-xi or -xui,	plexum,	to plait.
Necto,	-xi or -xui,	nexum,	to tie or knit.
Pecto,	-xi or -xui,	pexum,	to comb or dress.
Meto,	messui,	messum,	to reap or cut down.
Peto,	petivi,	petitum,	to seek or pursue.
Mitto,	missi,	missum,	to send.
Verto,	verti,	versum,	to turn.
Sterto,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Sisto, <i>act.</i>	stiti,	statum,	to stop.
Sisto, <i>neut.</i>	steti,	statum,	to stand still.
VO.			
Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	to live.
Solvo,	solvi,	solutum,	to loose.
Volvo,	volvi,	volutum,	to roll.
XO.			
Texo,	texui,	textum,	to weave.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

Some will have the Neuter Verb *sisto*, to want both Preterite and Supine. Its Compounds have *stiti* and *statum*; as, *assisti*, *astitum*, to stand by.

The Fourth CONJUGATION.

Q. What is the General Rule by which Verbs of the fourth Conjugation form the Preterite and Supine?

A. Verbs of the fourth Conjugation have *ivi* in the Preterite, and *itum* in the Supine; as, *audio*, *audivi*, *auditum*, to hear.

Q. What are the Exceptions?

Singultio,	singultivi,	singultum,	to vex or sob.
Sepelio,	sepelivi,	sepultum,	to bury.
Venio,	veni,	ventum,	to come.
Veneo,	venii,	—	to be sold.
M			Salio,

90 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Salio,	salui and salii,	saltum,	to leap.
Transilio,	-ui, -ii and -ivi,	transultum,	to leap over.
Amicio,	-ui, <i>seld.</i> -xi,	amictum,	to cover.
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to ty.
Sancio,	-xi, -ivi,	-ctum, citum,	to establish.
Cambio,	campsi,	campsum,	to change Money.
Sepio,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge.
Haurio,	hausi,	-stum, <i>seld.</i> -sum,	to empty, to draw.
Sentio,	senfi,	sensum,	to perceive.
Raucio,	raufi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Sarcio,	farfi,	sartum,	to mend or repair.
Farcio,	farfi,	fartum,	to cram or stuff up.
Fulcio,	fulfi,	fultum,	to stay or uphold.
Aperio,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
Comperio,	comperi,	compertum,	to know for certain.
Reperio,	reperi,	repertum,	to find.
Ferio,	—	—	to strike.
Cœnaturio,	—	—	to desire to sup.
Cæcutio,	cæcutivi,	—	to be dim-sighted.
Gestio,	gestivi,	—	to discover Joy by the
Aio,	—	—	to say. [<i>Gesture.</i>]
Glocio,	glocivi,	—	to cluck as a Hen.
Ineptio,	ineptivi,	—	to play the fool.
Ferocio,	ferocivi,	—	to be fierce.

Of the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *salio* have often *silui*, sometimes *fili*, of old *silivi*, in the Preterite, and *sultum* in the Supine; as, *transilio*, *transilui*, *transilii*, and *transiliv*, *transultum*.—*Abfultum*, *profultum*, *circumsultum*, are scarcely used.

All Meditative or Desiderative Verbs, want the Preterite and Supine, except three; *parturio*, *esurio*, *nupturio*, which follow the general Rule.

All the Compounds of *pario*, have *erui* and *ertum*, except *comperio* and *reperio*, which are conjugated as above.

Of the PRETERITES of Common and Deponent Verbs.

Q. How are the Preterites of Common and Deponent Verbs formed?

A. In order to form them, we must suppose an Active Voice, afterwards change *um* of the Supine into *us*, and add *sum vel fui*: as, from the supposed Verb *lato*, *latavi*, *latatum*, comes *lato*, *latatus sum vel fui*, to be glad.

Q. Are there any Exceptions from this Rule?

A. Yes; in the second, third and fourth Conjugations?

Q. What

OF CONJUGATION. 91

Q. What Exceptions are there in the second Conjugation?

A. The following :

Reor,	ratus sum <i>vel</i> fui,	rerī,	<i>to think.</i>
Misereor,	misertus,	misererī,	<i>to pity.</i>
Fateor,	fassus,	faterī,	<i>to confess.</i>

Q. What are the Exceptions in the third Conjugation?

Labor,	lapsus,	labi,	<i>to slide.</i>
Ulciscor,	ultus,	ulcisci,	<i>to revenge.</i>
Utor,	usus,	uti,	<i>to use.</i>
Loquor,	loquutus or -cutus,	loqui,	<i>to speak.</i>
Sequor,	sequutus or -cutus,	sequi,	<i>to follow.</i>
Queror,	questus,	queri,	<i>to complain.</i>
Nitor,	nisus or nixus,	niti,	<i>to endeavour.</i>
Paciscor,	pactus,	pacisci,	<i>to bargain.</i>
Gradior,	gressus,	gradi,	<i>to go.</i>
Proficiscor,	profectus,	proficisci,	<i>to go a Journey.</i>
Nanciscor,	nactus,	nancisci,	<i>to get.</i>
Patior,	passus,	pati,	<i>to suffer.</i>
Apiscor,	aptus,	apisci,	<i>to get.</i>
Comminiscor	commentus,	comminisci,	<i>to advise, to invent.</i>
Fruor,	fructus or fruitus,	frui,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
Obliviscor,	oblitus,	oblivisci,	<i>to forget.</i>
Expergiscor,	experrectus,	expergisci,	<i>to awaken.</i>
Morior,	mortuus,	mori,	<i>to die.</i>
Nascor,	natus,	nasci,	<i>to be born.</i>

Q. What are the Exceptions in the fourth Conjugation?

Metior,	mensus,	metiri,	<i>to measure.</i>
Ordior,	orsus,	ordiri,	<i>to begin.</i>
Orior,	ortus,	oriri,	<i>to rise.</i>
Experior,	expertus,	experiri,	<i>to try, to attempt.</i>
Opperior,	oppertus,	opperiri,	<i>to wait for one.</i>

The following Verbs have no Participle of the Preterite Tense.

Vescor,	—	vesci,	<i>to feed.</i>
Liquor,	—	liqui,	<i>to melt.</i>
Medeor,	—	mederi,	<i>to heal.</i>
Reminiscor,	—	reminisci,	<i>to remember.</i>
Ringor,	—	ringi,	<i>to grin like a Dog.</i>
Diffiteor,	—	diffiteri,	<i>to deny.</i>
Divertor,	—	diverti,	<i>to turn aside.</i>
Defetiscor,	—	defetisci,	<i>to be weary.</i>
Prævertor,	—	præverti,	<i>to get before.</i>

OF the COMPOUNDS.

The Compounds of *fateor* take *fessus* ; as, *profiteor*, *professus*, *profiteri*, to declare openly. *Connitor*, *innitor*, *obnitor*, *renitor*, and *subnitor*, have oftner *xus* than *sus* ; we write *annixus* or *annisus* from *annitor*, in the same Signification ; but we use *enixus* always when we speak of Birth, *enisus* of any other Attempt. Observe, we read *moriturus*, *oriturus*, *nasciturus*.

OF

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Q. HOW are the Irregular Verbs divided?

A. Into *Anomalous*, *Defective*, and *Abundant*.

Q. What are the Anomalous?

A. The Anomalous are these Verbs which are conjugated in another Manner than the Verbs of the four regular Conjugations; as, *sum*, *volo*, *nolo*, &c.

Q. What are the Defective?

A. The Defective Verbs, among which one may reckon *Impersonals*, are those which want particular Tenses, Numbers, and Persons; as, *odi*, *memini*, &c.

Q. What are the Abundant Verbs?

A. They are such, as, in some good Authors, are found to be of various Terminations, of different Kinds, and in different Conjugations; as, *maneo* is sometimes Neuter, sometimes Active; as, *nihil semper suo statu manet. Te triste manebit supplicium.*——Of different Terminations, we have *lacrymo* and *lacrymor.*——Of different Conjugations, we read *serveo*, *servo*; and *fervo*, *fervis*. But of all these more particularly, as they succeed one another.

The Conjugation of ANOMALOUS Verbs.

Q. What is the Anomalous Verb which is commonly first conjugated?

A. The Verb *sum*; but as we have already had Occasion to conjugate that Verb, we shall begin with *prosum*.

PROSUM, *to do good*, has a *d* where *sum* had *e*; as,

IND. { Pr. pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, &c.
Im. prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.
SUB. Im. prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset: prod-essemus, &c.
IMPERAT. prod-esto, prod-este. INFINIT. Pres. prod-esse.

Possū, potui, posse, *to be able*.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Pr. possum, potes, potest: possumus, potestis, possunt.
Im. pot-eram, -eras, -erat: -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
Per. pot-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.
Plu. pot-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. pot-ero, -eris, -erit: -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

The

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit :	-simus,	-sitis,	-sint.
<i>Im.</i> pos-sem,	-ses,	-set :	-semus,	-setis,	-sent.
<i>Per.</i> pot-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> pot-uisssem,	-uisses,	-uisset :	-uisssemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> pot-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

The INFINITIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> posse.	<i>Per.</i> potuisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> eo,	is,	it :	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ibam,	ibas,	ibat :	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
<i>Per.</i> ivi,	ivisti,	ivit :	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivere.
<i>Plu.</i> iveram,	iveras,	iverat :	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> ibo,	ibis,	ibit :	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> eam,	eas,	eat :	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Im.</i> irem,	ires,	iret :	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Per.</i> iverim,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plu.</i> ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset :	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> ivero,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

The IMPERATIVE.

The INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> { i,	ito :	{ ite,	cunto.	<i>Pres.</i> ire.
{ ito,		{ itote,		<i>Perf.</i> ivisse.
				<i>Fut.</i> iturum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.

PARTICIPLES.

SUPINES.

GERUNDS.

<i>Pr.</i> iens,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.	1. itum.	eundum.
<i>Fut.</i> iturus,	-a, -um.	2. itu.	eundi.
			eundo.

REMARKS upon this Verb.

Eo very much resembles a Verb of the fourth Conjugation. Old Verbs of the fourth Conjugation had their Imperfect in *i-bam*, and the Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.—After the same Manner are conjugated *adeo*, *abeo*, *exeo*, *obeo*, *redeo*, *subeo*, *pereo*, the Compounds of *eo*, which for the most Part are contracted in the Perfect; as, *adiit*, *abiit*, &c.—But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the fourth Conjugation.—*Queo* and *nequeo* are conjugated like *eo*.

Volo,

94 *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

Volo, volui, velle, To will, or to be willing.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> volo,	vis,	vult:	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
<i>Im.</i> vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.
<i>Plu.</i> vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i> vol-am,	-es,	-et:	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> velim,	velis,	velit:	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
<i>Im.</i> vellem,	velles,	vellet:	vellemus,	velletis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i> vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> vol-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset:	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. velle. Perf. voluisse. Pres. volens.
The rest are wanting.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> nolo,	non-vis,	non-vult:	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
<i>Im.</i> nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.
<i>Plu.</i> nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i> nolam,	noles,	nolet:	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

<i>Pr.</i> nolim,	nolis,	nolit:	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
<i>Im.</i> nollem,	nolles,	nollet:	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
<i>Per.</i> nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> nol-uissē,	-uisses,	-uisset:	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pr. { noli, { nolite, | *Pr.* nolle. | *Pr.* nolens.
 { nolito : { nolitote. | *Per.* noluisse. | *The rest wanting.*

Malo,

OF CONJUGATION. 95

Malo, malui, malle, *to be more willing.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Pr. malo, mavis, mavult: malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Im. mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. mal-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
Plu. mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. mal-āim, -es, -et: *The rest are wanting.*

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. malim, malis, malit: malimus, malitis, malint.
Im. mallet, malles, mallet: mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Per. mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. mal-uissē, -uisses, -uisset: -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

The INFINITIVE Mood.

Pref. malle. *Perf.* maluisse.

NOTE, That *volo*, *nolo*, and *malo*, retain something of the third Conjugation; for *vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *volis*, *volit*, *volitis*, and *o* is changed into *u*, since of old they said *volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *non-volo*, and *malo* of *magis-volo*.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring.*

The ACTIVE VOICE.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Pr. fero, fers, fert: ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Im. fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. tuli, tulisti, tulit: tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere.
Plu. tul-eram, -eras, -erat: -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
Fut. feram, feres, feret: feremus, feretis, ferent.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. feram, feras, ferat: feramus, feratis, ferant.
Im. ferrem, ferres, ferret: ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Per. tul-erim, -eris, -erit: -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Plu. tul-issē, -isses, -isset: -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.
Fut. tul-ero, -eris, -erit: -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

I M-

96 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
Pr.	{ fer, fertor : { ferte, ferunto. { fertor, fertote,	Pr. ferre. Per. tulisse. Fut. laturum esse vel fuisse.
PARTICIPLES.		GERUNDS.
Pres. ferens.	1. latum. 2. latu.	ferendum, ferendi, ferendo.
Fut. laturus, -a, -um,		

REMARKS upon this Verb.

Fero is a Verb of the third Conjugation, *fers, fert, fertis, fertor, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur*, and *feritor*.

Also *fer* is contracted of *fere* ; as it has happened to the Imperative of *dico, duco, facio*, which have *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *fero* are conjugated the same way as the Simple Verb ; as, *affero, attuli, allatum ; aufero, abstuli, ablatum ; differo, distuli, dilatatum ; confero, contuli, collatum ; infero, intuli, illatum ; offero, obtuli, oblatum ; effero, extuli, elatum ; So circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, praefero*.

The PASSIVE VOICE.

Feror, latus, ferri, To be brought.

The INDICATIVE Mood,

Pr. feror,	{ ferris, fertur : ferimur, ferimini, feruntur. { ferre,
Im. fer-ebat,	{ -ebaris, -ebatur : -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur. { -ebare,
Per. latus sum vel fui, &c.	
Plu. latus eram vel fueram, &c.	
Fut. ferar,	{ fereris, feretur : feremur, feremini, ferentur. { ferere,

The

Of CONJUGATION.

97

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. ferar, { feraris, feratur : feramur, feramini, ferantur.
 { ferare,
Im. ferrer, { ferreris, ferretur : ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
 { ferrere,
Per. latus sim *vel* fuerim, &c.
Plu. latus essem *vel* fuisset, &c.
Fut. latus fuero, &c.

The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Pres. { ferre, fertor : ferimini, feruntor.
 { fertor,

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> ferri.	<i>Perf.</i> latus, -a, -um. <i>Fut.</i> ferendus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> latum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.	
<i>Fut.</i> latum iri.	

Fio, factus, fieri, *To be done.*

The INDICATIVE Mood.

Pr. fio, fis, fit : fimus, fitis, fiunt.
Im. fiebam, fiebas, fiebat : fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.
Per. factus sum *vel* fui, &c.
Plu. factus eram *vel* fueram, &c.
Fut. fiam, fies, fiet : fiemus, fietis, fient.

REMARKS upon this Verb.

Fio is the Passive of *facio*, instead of *facior*, which is not used. But all the Compounds of *facio*, which change *a* into *i*, form the Passive in the ordinary Way, by adding *r* to the Active, &c. as, from *afficio* comes *afficior*, *affectus sum vel fui*, *affici*, &c.—The Compounds of *facio*, with Verbs, Nouns, or Adverbs, keep the *a*, and have their Imperative *fac*, and their Passive Voice, when used, ends in *fio*; as, *calefacio*, *calefac*, *calefio*, &c.—The Compounds of *facio*, with a Preposition, change *a* into *i*, and have *facio*, and *facior*; as, *afficio*, *afficior*.—There are some Compounds of *facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the first Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *-avi*, *-atum*; *significo*, *-avi*, *-atum*.

N

The

98 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Pr. *fiam, fias, fiat: fiamus, fiatis, fiant.*
Im. *fierem, fieres, fieret: fieremus, fieretis, fierent.*
Per. *factus sim vel fuerim, &c.*
Plu. *factus essem vel fuisset, &c.*
Fut. *factus fuero, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. { *fi, fito: fitote, fiunto.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *fieri.*
Per. *factum esse vel fuisse.*
Fut. *factum iri.*

PARTICIPLES.

Per. *factus, -a, -um.*
Fut. *faciendus, -a, -um.*

SUPINE.

factu.

Of DEFECTIVE Verbs.

Q. What are the Defective Verbs which want particular Persons and Numbers?

A. The following: *aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *forem*, I should be; *aufim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, God save you; *cedo*, tell or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Q. How are they conjugated?

A. In the following Manner.

IND. { *Pr.* *aio, ais, ait: — — aiunt.*
Im. *aiebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.*
Per. — *aisti, — — —*
SUB. *Pr.* — *aias, aiat: — aiatis, aiant.*
IMPERAT. *ai.* [PARTICIP. *Pres.* *aiens.*]

INDIC. { *Pr.* *inquam, -quis -quit: -quimus, -quitis, -quiunt.*
Im. — — *inquebat: — — inquebant.*
Per. — *inquisti, — — —*
Fut. — *inquies, inquiet: — — —*
IMPERAT. *inque, inquito.* PARTICIP. *Pr.* *inquiens.*

SUB. { *Im.* } *forem, fores, foret: foremus, foretis, forent.*
Plu. }
INF. *fore, to be, or to be about to be, the same with futurum esse.*

SUB.

SUB.	{	<i>Pr.</i> ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	—	—	—
		<i>Per.</i> faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	—	—	faxint.
		<i>Fut.</i> faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	—	faxitis,	faxint.

IMPERAT.	{	ave,	avete,		INFIN.	{	avere.
		aveto :	avetote.				salvere.
		salve,	salvete,				
		salveto :	salvetote.				
		cedo :	cedite.				

INDIC. *Pres.* quæso, quæsumus.

Q. Are there not other Sorts of Defective Verbs?

A. Yes; these three Verbs, *odi*, *memini*, *cæpi*, have only the Preterite Tense, and what is formed from it; and are therefore by some called Preteritive Verbs:

Odi,	oderam,	oderim,	odissem,	odero,	odisse.
Memini,	memineram,	meminerim,	meminissem,	meminero,	meminisse.
Cæpi,	cæperam,	cæperim,	cæpissem,	cæpero,	cæpisse.

But observe, that under these they comprehend the Signification of other Tenses; as, *memini*, I remember; or I have remembered; *memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *odi*, I hate, or I have hated; *cæpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Mr. RUDDIMAN doubts if this Perfect Signification of the Verb *cæpi* is founded upon good Authority.——*Memini* hath also the Imperative *memento*, remember thou; *mementote*, remember ye.

Some add *meminens*, remembering; which is scarcely to be imitated.

The Participles *cæptus* and *osus*, with its Compounds *perosus*, *exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *perodi* and *exodi*, are not.

To these Verbs add *novi*, because it frequently has the Signification of the Present *I know*, as well as *I have known*, tho' it comes from *nosco*, which hath all the Tenses.

Q. What are the last of the Defective Verbs?

A. *Fari*, to speak, wants *for*, the first Person of the Present of the Indicative, and *fer*, the first Person of the Present of the Subjunctive. Nay, in this Tense we seldom read *feris*, *fetur*, &c. *Do* likewise, in the Passive, wants *dor* and *der*, tho' we read the other Persons of these Tenses, *daris* vel *dare*, *datur*; *deris* vel *dere*, *detur*.

The

100 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The Compounds of the first, *effor*, *affor*, seldom occur; but the Compounds of the other are very frequent; as *addor*, *reddor*, &c.

Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found except among the Poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *desit*, it is wanting; *confit*, it is done; *ovet*, he rejoiceth. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sultis*, for *si vultis*, if ye will; *sodes*, for *si audes*, if thou darest; *capfis*, for *cape si vis*.

OF IMPERSONAL Verbs.

Q. What is an Impersonal Verb?

A. An Impersonal Verb is that which does not admit of the Persons as Nominatives before them. In English they have the Sign *it*; as, *placet*, it pleases; *pœnitet*, it repents. For the most Part they have only the third Person Singular of every Tense.

Q. What is the Termination of Impersonal Verbs in the Active Voice?

A. They end in *t*, and are in Number ten; *decet*, *pœnitet*, *oportet*, *miseret*, *piget*, *pudet*, *licet*, *libet* or *lubet*, *tædet*, *liquet*.

Q. How

REMARKS upon the IMPERSONAL Verbs.

Impersonal Verbs want the Imperative; but instead of it we use the Present of the Subjunctive; as, *pœniteat*, *pugnetur*.

We can use Impersonals with any of the Persons and Numbers, by putting what is the Nominative in English, after the Impersonal Verb, in the Case which it happens to govern; as, I fight, *pugnatur a me*. He may, *licet illi*, &c.

All the other Impersonals of the Active Voice are conjugated like *pœnitet*, except *fix*, which have two Perfects, one Active, another Passive; as, *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miserum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *pudivit*, or *putum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædet*, *tæduit*, or *tæsum est*. *Liquet* scarcely admits of a Preterite.

Impersonal Verbs are sometimes used in other Persons as well as the third Person Singular; when this happens they are said to be used personally; as, we say, *tu mihi sola places*; *nulli noceo*; *multa homini accidunt*, *contingunt*, &c. But we ought carefully to remember, that such Verbs are commonly Impersonal, when a Verb of the Subjunctive or Infinitive Mood follows after them; as, tho' I can say, *tu places mihi*; I cannot say, *si places audire*; but *si pæcet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot say, *ego contigi esse domi*; but *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*.

Among Impersonals are commonly reckoned the following Personal Verbs, or Verbs which at other Times admit of all the Persons before them: They are of all the four Conjugations: Those of the first are, *delectat*, *juvat*, *peccat*, *vacat*, *stat*, with the Compounds *constat*, *prestat*, *restat*. Some are of the

second

OF CONJUGATION. 101

Q. How do they end in the Passive Voice ?

A. Impersonals of the Passive Voice end in *tur*, and cannot well be numbered. They are formed from all Active Verbs, and from many Neuter Verbs; as, from *lego* comes *legitur*; from *curro*, *curritur*.

CONJUGATION of an Active Impersonal Verb.

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Plus.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
IND.	pœnitēt,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnitærat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituiſſet,	pœnituerit.
INF.	pœnitere.		pœnituiſſe.		—

CONJUGATION of a Passive Impersonal Verb.

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquam.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
IND.	pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum { eſt, fuit,	-atum { erat, fuerat,	pugnabitur.
SUB.	pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum { ſit, fuerit,	-atum { eſſet, fuiſſet,	-atum fuerit.
INF.	pugnari.		pugnatum { eſſe, fuiſſe,		pugnatum iri.

OF ABUNDANT Verbs.

Q. How are the Abundant Verbs divided ?

A. Into ſuch as abound in Kind, that is, ſuch as are ſometimes claſſed with one Sort of Verbs, and ſometimes with another: Into thoſe that abound in Termination; and into ſuch as abound in Conjugation.

Q. What are the Verbs that abound in Kind ?

A. *Aboleo*, *duro*, and *maneo*, may ſerve for Examples; which are ſometimes uſed like Neuter, and ſometimes like Active Verbs: Thus *Liv. iii. 55. Cujus res prope jam memoria aboleverat.*
Abolere

ſecond Conjugation; as, *apparet*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *deceet*, *dolet*, *nocet*, *latet*, *patet*, *placet*, *diſplicet*, *ſedet*, *ſolet*, *aſſolet*.—Some are of the third; as, *accidit*, *contin- git*, *cœpit*, *incipit*, *conducit*, *deſinit*, *excidit*, *fugit*, *afficit*, *ſufficit*, *ſuccurrit*, *ſuppetit*.—Others are of the Fourth; as, *convenit*, *evenit*, *expedit*, &c.—

The Reason they are ranked among the Impersonal Verbs, is, becauſe they are ſometimes found in the third Perſon Singular abſolutely; that is, without any Nominative, or without the Perſons before them.—And ſome of the Irregular Verbs are uſed in this Way; as, *eſt*, with its Compounds *obeſt*, *pro- deſt*, &c.

Verbs, which ſignify Actions beyond the Power of Man, are a Kind of Im- perſonals; as, *fulgurat*, *fulminat*, *tonat*, *gelat*, *grandinat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *luceſcit*, and the like.

102 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Abolere testamentum. Durare nequeo in ædibus. Duravit animus. Nihil semper suo statu manet. Te triste manebit supplicium.—2. *Adipiscor, criminor, dignor, &c.* are sometimes Active, sometimes Passive; as, *maxime laudem adeptus esses*, says Cicero. In Plautus we read, *Non ætate, verum etiam ingenio adipiscitur sapientia. Hanc metui ne me criminaretur tibi.* We read also in Cicero, *Sullanæ res defendere criminor*, i. e. *accusor*. But it is sufficient to have observed this, without multiplying Examples.

Q. What Verbs abound in Termination?

A. *Assentio* and *assentior*; *fabrico, fabricor*; *mereo, mereor*; *munero, muneror*; *populo*, sometimes *populo*, but seldom; *comitor, seldom comito, &c.*

Q. What

Of the various Divisions and Kinds of VERBS.

1. Verbs are either *Simple*; as, *amo*, I love; or *Compound*; as, *redamo*, I love again.—2. *Primitive*; as, *lego*, I read; or *Derivative*; as, *lento*, I read often.—3. *Regular*; as, *amo*, I love; *Irregular*; as, *volo*, I will. 4. *Complete*; as, *doceo*, I teach; *Defective*; as, *inquam*, I say; or *Redundant*; as, *edo, edis, or edo, es.*—*Personal*; as, *lego*; *Impersonal*; as, *pœnitet*.

Verbs too are either *Active, Passive, Impersonal, Frequentative, Inceptive, Desiderative.*

An *Active Verb* signifies an Action done by the Person or Nominative before it; as, *amo*, I love: Such a Verb is either *Transitive* or *Intransitive*.

An *Active Transitive Verb* signifies an Action passing from the Doer to some other Thing without itself; as, *amo patrem*.

NOTE, That any Verb which admits of a rational Answer, when the Pronouns *whom* or *what* are put before it, is a *Transitive Verb*; as, *whom do you teach?* a Boy. *What do you read?* *Æsop's Fables*. When the Answer to any Verb, joined to *whom* or *what*, would be Nonsense, it is an *Active Intransitive Verb*; as, *whom do you stand?* *what do you go?*—The same Verb however is sometimes *Transitive*, sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *ver incipit*, the Spring begins; *incipere facinus*, to begin an Action.

An *Active Intransitive*, on the contrary, is a Verb whose Action does not pass from the Doer to any other Thing; as, *curro*, I run.

NOTE, That *Neuter Intransitive Verbs* are often englished with the Signs of a Passive Verb; as, *caleo*, I am hot; *palleo*, I am pale.

A *Passive Verb* is that which signifies the Passion or Suffering of the Nominative before it; as, *amor*, I am loved.

A *Neuter Verb* is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of the Nominative before it, but simply signifies the State, Posture or Quality of Things; as, *I stand, I sit, I rest, I excel, it is green.*

A *Deponent Verb* is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active Signification; as, *loquor, locutus, loqui*, to speak.

A *Common Verb* is that which has a Passive Termination, and sometimes an Active, sometimes a Passive Signification; as, *criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy of.

A

Q. What Verbs abound in Conjugation.

A. *Lavo*, which generally is of the first Conjugation; sometimes, but seldom in the Third, *lavo, lavi, lavere*.—These Verbs, *serveo, fulgeo, strideo, tueor*, are for the most Part used in the second Conjugation; seldom *fervo, fervis; fulgo, fulgis*, &c. in the Third.—We read *tergeo, terges*, and *tergo, tergis*, frequently, both in the second and third Conjugation: As also the Compounds *detergeo* and *detergo; abstergeo* and *abstergo*.—We read *fodio, fallo, morior*, in the third much oftner than *fodio, fallio, morior*, in the fourth Conjugation.—*Cieo* has *cies, ciere*, in the second Conjugation, much oftner than *cio, cis, cire*, in the Fourth.

Q. Are there any other Verbs to be mentioned among the Abundant Verbs.

A. Yes; *edo* is one of that Kind, which is conjugated two Ways.

IND. Pref. *Edo, edis vel es; edit vel est: — editis vel estis.* —

IMP. *Ede vel es; edito vel eslo; edite vel este; editote vel estote.*

SUB. Imp. *Ederem vel essem; ederes vel esses, &c.*

INF. Pref. *Edere vel esse.*

PASSIVE, IND. Pref. *Editur vel estur.*

To

A *Neuter Passive* Verb is that which is half Active and half Passive in the Termination; but in the Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *fio, factus, fieri*, to be made; or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *audeo, ausus sum*, to dare; *gaudeo, gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

A *Frequentative* Verb signifies the doing of a Thing frequently; as, *clamito*, to cry often, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*.

A *Desiderative* Verb signifies a Desire of Action; as, *cœnaturio*, I desire to sup; *esurio*, I desire to eat.

An *Inceptive* Verb signifies a Thing begun, and tending to Perfection; as, *calesco*, I begin to grow warm.

NOTE 1. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the Passive Voice, unless it be used impersonally, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum est*.

NOTE 2. That *Frequentative* Verbs are formed in all Conjugations from the last Supine; in the first Conjugation, by changing *atu* into *ito*; as, *volito* from *volatu*; in the other three Conjugations by changing *u* into *o*; as, *territo* from *territu*; *verso* from *versu*.

NOTE 3. *Frequentatives* are often formed from *Frequentatives*; as, from *curso*, to run often, comes *kursito*; from *jacto* comes *jactito*; from *pulso* comes *pulsito* and *pulto*.—The original Themes of these *Frequentative* Verbs, are the simple Verbs *curro, jacio, pullo*.

All *Inceptive* Verbs are of the third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine. They are always formed from the second Person Singular of the Present of the Indicative, by adding *co*; as, *calesco* from *cales*, from the simple Verb *caleo*.

Desiderative Verbs are formed from the last Supine, by adding *rio*; they are all of the fourth Conjugation, and for the most Part want the Preterite and Supine; as, *edo, esu, esurio, &c.*

104 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

To these we shall add the four following Verbs, which are commonly called *Neutro-Passives*:

Soleo,	solitus sum,	solere,	to use, to be accustomed.
Audeo,	ausus sum,	audere,	to dare.
Fido,	fusus sum,	fidere,	to trust.
Fio,	factus sum,	fieri,	to be made.

OF PARTICIPLES.

Q. WHAT is a Participle?

A. A Participle is a Part of Speech that comes from a Verb, and like it, signifies being, doing, or suffering; but then it is also declined like an Adjective, by Genders, Cases, and Numbers.—A Participle comes always from a Verb, and in its Signification must imply Time; otherwise it is not a Participle, but an Adjective; as, *tunicatus*, coated; *larvatus*, masked, and such like, are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

Q. How are Participles divided?

A. Into Participles of the *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future* Tense.

Q. How do each of these Participles end?

A. Those of the Present Tense end in *ns*; as, *amans*, loving.—Those of the Perfect in *tus*, *fus*, *xus*; as, *amatus*, loved; *visus*, seen; *nexus*, bound.—Those of the Future in *rus* and *dus*; as, *amaturus*, about to love; *amandus*, to be loved.

Q. How many Participles have Active Verbs?

A. Two; the Present, which belongs only to this Voice, in *ns*; as, *amans*, loving; and the Future in *rus*, *amaturus*, about to love.

Q. How many Participles have Passive Verbs?

A. Also two; the Perfect Participle in *tus*, *fus*, *xus*, and the Future in *dus*.—Observe that there is one Participle in *uus*, *mortuus*, dead.

Q. How

Of the PARTICIPLES of English Verbs.

A Participle is so called, because it partakes both of the Nature of a Verb and a Noun, having Cases and Genders from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

The Present Participle in English ends always in *ing*; as, *loving*.—The Perfect Participle ends commonly in *ed*; as, *loved*.—Those Perfect Participles which do not end in *ed*, we shall draw out in the following Scheme, and with them all the irregular Imperfects of English Verbs, which ought also to end in *ed*; as in *loved*, *pulled*, *planted*, and a great many more regular Imperfects.

A

Q. How many Participles have Neuter Verbs ?

A. Two ; as, *sedens, sessurus*.—Sometimes Active Intransitive Verbs have three Participles ; as, *carens*, wanting ; *cariturus*, about to want ; *carendus*, to be wanted ; and sometimes four ; as, *vigilans*, watching ; *vigilaturus*, about to watch ; *vigilatus*, watched ; *vigilandus*, to be watched.

Q. How many Participles have Deponent Verbs ?

A. Deponent Verbs, which have an Active Signification, admit of four ; as, *sequens*, following ; *sequutus*, followed ; *sequuturus*, about to follow ; *sequendus*, to be followed. But those, like *labor*, which incline to a Neuter Signification, have only three ; *labens, lapsus, lapsurus*, seldom taking the Future in *dus*.

Q. How many Participles have Common Verbs ?

A. They have also four ; as, *dignans*, vouchsafing ; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignatus*, having or being vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed.

Q. How are Deponent Participles englished ?

A. Deponent Participles are englished with the Signs *having, or who have* ; as, *ego expertus loqui*, I having (who have) tried to speak.

The Perfect Participle in Deponent Verbs may be englished as the Participle of the Present Tense ; as, *date veniam mihi fasso*, give Pardon to me confessing. And we may further observe, that many others of them, have both an Active and Passive

A SCHEME of Irregular English PARTICIPLES and PERFECTS, which are the same.

Pres. Perf. & Part.	Pr. Per. & Part.	Pr. Per. & Part.	Pr. Per. & Part.
Awake, awoke.	Dig, dug & dig'd	Lead, led.	Send, sent.
Abide, abode.	Dream, dreamt.	Leave, left.	Shine, shone.
Be, been.	Dwell, dwelt.	Leap, leapt.	Sit, sat.
Bend, bent.	Teach, taught.	Lend, lent.	Sleep, slept.
Unbend, unbent.	Feed, fed.	Lose, lost.	Smell, smelt.
Bereave, bereft.	Feel, felt.	Make, made.	Spill, spilt.
Beseech, besought.	Fight, fought.	Mean, meant.	Spend, spent.
Bind, bound.	Find, found.	Meet, met.	Spin, spun.
Bleed, bled.	Flee, fled.	Sell, sold.	Stand, stood.
Breed, bred.	Fling, flung.	Gird, girt.	Stick, stuck.
Bring, brought.	Hang, hung.	Grind, ground.	Sting, stung.
Buy, bought.	Hear, heard.	Rend, rent.	Sweep, swept.
Catch, caught.	Keep, kept.	Say, said.	Tell, told.
Creep, crept.	Lay, laid,	Seek, sought.	Wring, wrung.
Deal, dealt.			

106 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

five Signification; as, *testatus*, having testified, or being testified; *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, &c.

Q. Are not some Participles compounded with *in*?

A. Yes; and in this Case they always imply Negation or Denying, tho' the Verbs from whence they are derived, will allow of no such Composition; as, *illæsus*, *inauditus*, *impransus*, *incustoditus*, *insciens*, &c.

Q. Are not Participles sometimes joined to the Verb *sum*, to supply the Place of several Tenses in many Verbs?

Q. Yes; as, *Socrates est apud Platonem loquens*, for *loquitur*; *fui te carens*, for *carui*.——The Future Participle, with *sum* in the Present Tense, is usually englished as the Future of the Indicative, and often used in Place of it; as, *nihil ego daturus sum illi*, I shall give him nothing.

Q. How is the Perfect Participle Passive englished?

A. The Perfect Participle Passive is englished by *having been*, or rather *being*; as, *mundus creatus ex nihilo durat adhuc*, the World being, or having been created out of nothing, lasts still.——Sometimes it is englished without either of these Signs; as, *terra arata*, ploughed Land.

Of

A SCHEME of Irregular English PERFECTS and PARTICIPLES which are not the same.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Bear,	bore,	born.	Ride,	rid,	ridden.
Begin,	began,	begun.	Ring,	rang,	rung.
Beat,	beat,	beaten.	Rise,	rose,	risen.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Run,	ran,	run.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	See,	saw,	seen.
Break,	broke,	broken.	Seeth,	sod,	sodden:
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Shear,	shore,	shorn.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Come,	came,	come.	Shrunk,	shrank,	shrunk.
Die,	died,	dead.	Slay,	flew,	slain.
Do,	did,	done.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	Snow,	snowed,	snown.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Sow,	sowed,	sown.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Get,	got,	gotten.	Strike,	struck,	stricken.
Give,	gave,	given.	Swear,	swore,	sworn.
Go,	went,	gone.	Swim,	swam,	swem.
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Hew,	hewed,	hewn.	Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Hold,	held,	holden.	Wear,	wore,	worn.
Know,	knew,	known.	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Lie,	lay,	laid.	Win,	won and wain,	won.
Mow,	mowed,	mown.	Write,	writ and wrote,	written.

Of the INDECLINABLE Parts of Speech.

Of the PARTICLES.

A Particle is a Word which is not declined, and according to its different Use and Signification, may be distinguished into these four Sorts; *Adverbs, Prepositions, Interjections, Conjunctions.*

Of the ADVERB.

Q. WHAT is an Adverb?

A. An Adverb is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which expresses some Circumstance concerning the Manner, Time, or Place of the Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, to which it is added; as, *The wicked are justly punished, &c.*

Q. Give me a List of the Adverbs?

Bene,	<i>well.</i>	Utpote,	<i>to wit.</i>
Male,	<i>ill.</i>	Scilicet,	<i>namely.</i>
Fortiter,	<i>bravely.</i>	Seorsum,	<i>apart.</i>
Profecto,	<i>truly.</i>	Separatim,	<i>separately.</i>
Quidni,	<i>why not.</i>	Sigillatim,	<i>one by one.</i>
Omnino,	<i>altogether.</i>	Viritim,	<i>Man by Man.</i>
Forfan,	<i>perhaps.</i>	Oppidatim,	<i>Town by Town.</i>
Non,	<i>not.</i>	Simul,	<i>together.</i>
Nequaquam,	<i>not at all.</i>	Plerumque,	<i>for the most Part.</i>
Neutiquam,	<i>by no means.</i>	Ecce,	<i>see here.</i>
Minime,	<i>not in the least.</i>	Cur,	<i>why.</i>

Num,

REMARKS upon the ADVERBS.

Adverbs appear to have been contrived, that we might express in one Word what would otherwise have taken two; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*.

Adverbs coming from Adjectives which are compared, have all the Degrees of Comparison; the Positive ends in *e* or *ter*; as, *dure*, acriter. The Comparative in *ius*; as, *durius*, acrius. The Superlative in *ime*; as, *durissime*, acerrime.

Observe too, that the Adverbs derived from Adjectives, which are irregularly compared, follow the same Manner of Comparison with the Adjective whence they come; as, *bene*, melius, optime; *male*, pejus, pessime; *parvum*, minus, minime. We say *magis*, maxime; *ocys*, ocysime; *prius*, primo vel primum; *potius*, potissimum; without the Positive.——We say *pæne*, pænissime; *nuper*, nuperrime; *novæ*, noviter and novissime; *merito*, meritissime; without the Comparative.——*Excusate*, excusatius; *tempori*, temporius; *satis*, satius; *secus*, secius; want the Superlative.

108 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Num,	<i>whether.</i>	Superne,	<i>from above.</i>
Quî,	<i>how.</i>	Inferne,	<i>from below.</i>
Valde,	<i>very much.</i>	Cœlitus,	<i>from Heaven.</i>
Nimis,	<i>too much.</i>	Funditus,	<i>from the Ground.</i>
Prorsus,	<i>altogether.</i>	Qua,	<i>which Way.</i>
Ubi,	<i>where.</i>	Hac,	<i>this Way.</i>
Hic,	<i>here.</i>	Illac,	} <i>that Way.</i>
Illic,	} <i>there.</i>	Isthac,	
Isthic,		Alia,	<i>another Way.</i>
Ibi,		Nunc,	<i>now.</i>
Intus,	<i>within.</i>	Hodie,	<i>to day.</i>
Foris,	<i>without.</i>	Tunc,	} <i>then.</i>
Ubique,	<i>every where.</i>	Tum,	
Nusquam,	<i>no where.</i>	Heri,	<i>Yesterday.</i>
Alicubi,	<i>some where.</i>	Dudum,	} <i>heretofore.</i>
Alibi,	<i>else where.</i>	Pridem,	
Ubivis,	<i>any where.</i>	Pridie,	<i>the Day before.</i>
Ibidem,	<i>in the same Place.</i>	Nudius tertius,	<i>three Days ago.</i>
Quo,	<i>whither.</i>	Nuper,	<i>lately.</i>
Huc,	<i>hither.</i>	Jamjam,	<i>presently.</i>
Illuc,	<i>thither.</i>	Mox,	<i>by and by.</i>
Intro,	<i>to within.</i>	Statim,	<i>immediately.</i>
Foras,	<i>to without.</i>	Protinus,	<i>instantly.</i>
Eo,	<i>to that Place.</i>	Illico,	<i>straightway.</i>
Alio,	<i>to another Place.</i>	Cras,	<i>to morrow.</i>
Aliquo,	<i>to some Place.</i>	Postridie,	<i>the Day after.</i>
Eodem,	<i>to the same Place.</i>	Perendie,	<i>two Days hence.</i>
Quorsum,	<i>whitherward.</i>	Nondum,	<i>not yet.</i>
Versus,	<i>towards.</i>	Quando,	<i>when.</i>
Horsum,	<i>hitherward.</i>	Aliquando,	} <i>sometimes.</i>
Ilorsum,	<i>thitherward.</i>	Nonnunquam,	
Sursum,	<i>upward.</i>	Interdum,	} <i>ever.</i>
Deorsum,	<i>downward.</i>	Semper,	
Antrorsum,	<i>forward.</i>	Nunquam,	<i>never.</i>
Retrorsum,	<i>backward.</i>	Interim,	<i>in the mean time.</i>
Dextrorsum,	<i>to the right Hand.</i>	Quotidie,	<i>daily.</i>
Sinistrorsum,	<i>to the left Hand.</i>	Diu,	<i>long.</i>
Unde,	<i>from whence.</i>	Quamdiu,	<i>how long.</i>
Hinc,	<i>from hence.</i>	Tamdiu,	<i>so long.</i>
Illinc,	} <i>from thence.</i>	Jamdiu,	} <i>long ago.</i>
Isthinc,		Jamdudum,	
Inde,		Jampridem,	
Aliunde,	<i>from elsewhere.</i>	Quoties,	<i>how often.</i>
Alicunde,	<i>from some Place.</i>	Sæpe,	<i>often.</i>
Sicunde,	<i>if from any Place.</i>	Raro,	<i>seldom.</i>
Utrinque,	<i>on both Sides.</i>		

Toties,

Toties,	<i>so often.</i>	Inde,	<i>then.</i>
Aliquoties,	<i>for several times.</i>	Deinde,	<i>thereafter.</i>
Vicissim,	} <i>by turns.</i>	Dehinc,	<i>henceforth.</i>
Alternatim,		Porro,	<i>moreover.</i>
Rursus,	} <i>again.</i>	Deinceps,	<i>so forth.</i>
Iterum,		Denuo,	<i>of new.</i>
Subinde,	} <i>ever and anon.</i>	Denique,	<i>finally.</i>
Idetidem,		Postremo,	<i>lastly.</i>
Semel,	<i>once.</i>	Primo,	<i>first.</i>
Bis,	<i>twice.</i>	Secundo,	<i>secondly, &c.</i>
Ter,	<i>thrice, &c.</i>		

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Q. **W**HAT is a Preposition?

A. A Preposition is a Part of Speech, which being added to the other Parts of Speech, serves to point out what Relation they have together; as, *Peter goes over the Bridge, or under it.*

Q. How are the Prepositions divided?

A. Into *Separable* and *Inseparable*.

Q. What are the Separable Prepositions?

A. Such as can stand separately in a Sentence by themselves.

Q. What

REMARKS upon the PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are either Simple; as, *ad, ante*; or Compound; as, *exadversum, inante, exante, absque*.

They are also Primitive; as, *apud, pro*; or Derivative; as, *adversus, secundum*, from *adversus, -a, -um*; *secundus, -a, -um*.

Prepositions, when joined to other Words, commonly keep their usual Signification.——EXCEP. 1. *In*, which, when joined to Nouns and Participles, often signifies the Want of a Thing; as *insidus, indoctus*. 2. *In*, joined to a Verb, often increases the Signification; as, *infringo, induro*, i. e. *valde frango, valde duro*. It has the same Effect in the Participles *infractus, induratus*. 3. *In* also, with a Noun, sometimes increases the Signification; as, *incans, incurvus*. 4. *Per*, often increases the Signification; as, *percarus, perdifficilis*; sometimes it alters the Signification; as, *perfidus, perjurus*. 5. *Præ* sometimes increases; as, *præclarus, prædives, prævaleo, præpolleo*. 6. *Sub* sometimes lessens; as, *subtristis, subirascor*. 7. *De* often signifies the same with *deorsum*, downward; as, *decido, decurro*; sometimes it increases; as, *deamo, demiror*; sometimes it changes a Word to an opposite Sense; as, *demens, decolor*. 8. *Ex* sometimes increases; as, *exclamo, exaggero*; sometimes deprives; as, *exsanguis, exanimo*.

110 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What are the Inseparable Prepositions ?

A. Such as cannot stand in a Sentence by themselves, but are always joined to another Word ; as, *contraho*, to draw together, of *con* and *traho*.

Of the SEPARABLE Prepositions.

Q. What Cases do the Separable Prepositions govern ?

A. They govern either the Accusative or Ablative, and a few govern sometimes the Accusative, sometimes the Ablative.

Q. What are the Separable Prepositions which govern the Accusative ?

A. The Prepositions which govern the Accusative are :

Ad,	to.	Infra,	beneath.
Apud,	at.	Juxta,	nigh to.
Ante,	before.	Ob,	for.
Adversus,	}	Propter	for, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	by, through.
Contra,	}	Præter,	besides, except.
Cis,		Penes,	in the Power of.
Citra,	}	Post,	after.
Circa		Pone,	behind.
Circum,	}	Secus,	by, along.
Erga,		Secundum,	according to.
Extra,		Supra,	above.
Inter,	between, among.	Trans,	on the farther Side.
Intra,	within.	Ultra,	beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the Ablative are fifteen, viz.

A,	}	De,	of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	}
Abs,		Ex,	
Abſque,		Pro,	for.
Cum,		Præ,	before.
Clam,		Palam,	with the Knowledge of.
		Sine,	without.
Coram,		Tenus,	up to.

These four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative :

In,	in, into.	Super,	above.
Sub,	under.	Subter,	beneath.

Of

OF INTERJECTIONS. 111

Of the INSEPARABLE Prepositions.

Q. What are the Inseparable Prepositions?

A. The Inseparable Prepositions are :

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	} as, {	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di,	<i>afunder.</i>		Divello,	<i>to pull afunder.</i>
Dis,			Diftraho,	<i>to draw afunder.</i>
Re,	<i>again.</i>		Relego,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>afide or apart.</i>		Sepono,	<i>to lay afide.</i>
Con,	<i>together.</i>		Concreſco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Q. WHAT is an Interjection?

A. An Interjection is a Particle brought into Discourse to expreſs ſome ſudden Paſſion of the Mind ; as, *evax*, hey, brave ; *ah*, *hei*, alas ; *papæ*, O ſtrange, &c.

Q. Are there not ſome Nouns and Verbs which reſemble Interjections ?

A. Yes ; theſe Words ſeem to have put on the Nature of Interjections, and are uſed for them ; as, *malum*, *turpe*, *nefas*, *ſodes*, *amabo*, *quæſo*.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Q. WHAT is a Conjunction?

A. A Conjunction is a Particle which joins Sentences, or Parts of a Sentence, ſo as to ſhow the Manner of their Dependence, and the Relation of one Thought to another.

Of theſe ſome are called *Copulative*, which join both Words and Senſe ; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *etiam*, *quoque* ; alſo, *tum*, *cum*, both, and.

Q. How are they divided ?

A. Into the following different Kinds.

1. The *Disjunctive* are thoſe which connect Words of different or oppoſite Meanings, but do not mark which of them we receive, or which we reſuſe ; as, *aut vult*, *aut non vult*.

2. The *Conceſſive*, or ſuch as grant a Thing to be ſo and ſo ; as, *etſi*, *etiãſi*, altho'.

3. The *Adverſative* are thoſe which we uſe to join two Sentences together, declaring that the ſecond Sentence is contrary to the firſt ; as, *ſed*, *verum*, *autem*, but.

4. The *Cauſal* give the Reaſon or Cauſe of what went before ; as, *nam*, *enim*, for.

5. The *Illative* draw a Concluſion from what went before ; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, therefore.

6. The *Final* expreſs the End why any Thing is done or ſaid ; as, *ut*, *uti*, that, to the End that.

7. Con-

112 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

7. *Conditional* are such as, betwixt the Sentences they join, put in a Condition or Clause, without which, that which is said in the principal Sentence, can have no Effect; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, provided.*

8. The *Exceptive*, or Conjunctions of Exception or Restriction, are *ni, nisi, unless.*

9. The *Diminutive*, or those which lessen or give up something of what was designed, are, *saltem, at least, &c.*

10. The *Suspensive* Conjunctions, or those of Doubt and Deliberation, are, *an, anne, num, whether.*

11. The *Expletive* Conjunctions are, *autem, vero.*

12. The *Ordinative*, are those expressing Order; as, *deinde, thereafter.*

13. *Conjunctions Declarative*, are such as we use to explain a Thing more clearly; as, *videlicet, to wit.*

NOTE, These are *Prepositive* Conjunctions, or placed first in a Sentence; *ac, atque, aut, et, nempe, neque, nec, ni, nisi, quamobrem, quapropter, quare, quin, quocirca, sed, seu, si, sin, sive, vel, verum.*—The *Postpositive*, which stand in the second or third Place, are, *autem, enim, quoque, quidem, vero.*—The rest are common either to the Beginning, Middle, or End.—*Que, ne, ve,* are called inseparable Conjunctions, because they are never separated from the Words that are joined to them; as, *tuque, paterque tuus, videsne.*

Of the FIGURES in SPEECH.

Q. WHAT are the Figures used in Speech?

A. They are ten: *Prosithesis, Aphæresis, Syncope, Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Crasis, Diæresis, Metathesis, Antithesis.*

Q. What are the Effects of these Figures upon Speech?

A. They either add, take away, transpose, or change.

Q. What are the Figures which add?

A. *Prosithesis, Epenthesis, Paragoge*, and we may join *Diæresis*.—*Prosithesis* adds to the Beginning of a Word; as, *gnavus* for *navus*.—*Epenthesis* to the Middle; as, *relligio* for *religio*.—*Paragoge* to the End; as, *dicier* for *dici*.—*Diæresis* is the dividing of one Syllable into two; as, *aula'i* for *aulæ*.

Q. What are the Figures which take away?

A. These that take away, are: *Aphæresis, Syncope, Apocope, Crasis*.—*Aphæresis* takes away from the Beginning; as, *natus* for *gnatus*. *Syncope* from the Middle; as, *dixti* for *dixisti*. *Apocope* from the End; as, *viden'* for *videsne*. *Crasis* contracts two Syllables into one; as, *vemens* for *vehemens*.

Q. What are they which transpose and change?

A. They are called *Antithesis, Metathesis*.—*Antithesis* changes; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum*.—*Metathesis* transposes; as, *Lybia* for *Libya*.—*Tmesis* divides Words, and interposes others; as, *quod judicium cunque.*

OF SYNTAX.

Q. WHAT is Syntax?

A. Syntax is the right ordering of Words in Speech.

Q. How many Parts of Syntax are there?

A. Two; *Concord* and *Government*.

Q. What is Concord?

A. Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.

Q. What is Government?

A. Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.

OF CONCORD.

Q. WHAT is to be considered in Concord?

A. Four Things: 1. The Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive. 2. Of a Verb with a Nominative. 3. Of a Relative with an Antecedent. 4. Of a Substantive with a Substantive.

Q. What is the Concord of an Adjective with a Substantive?

1. A. An Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as, *Vir bonus*, a good Man; *Fœmina casta*, a chaste Woman; *Dulce pomum*, a sweet Apple.

Q. What

NUMB. 1. Q. What is to be further observed on this Rule?

A. The Substantive Noun is often understood; as, *paucis te volo*, viz. *verbis*. — The Substantive *negotium* is almost always understood; as, *triste*, viz. *negotium*, for *res tristis*.

An Adjective, having Respect to two Substantives of different Genders, agrees with that which is the most remarkable in the Sentence; as, *oppidum Paestum Græcis Posidonia appellatum*.

Q. What is the Way to find out the Substantive to an Adjective?

A. By asking the Question *Who*, or *What*, with the Adjective; as, *durum est*: What is hard? The Answer will be the Substantive *negotium*, the Thing of which we speak. — In the same Way we find the Nominative to a Verb; as, *habebatur disertus*; by asking, Who was reckoned eloquent? we find it was *vir*, the Person of whom we speak. — Thus also is found out the Antecedent to a Relative Pronoun; as, *bonus est quem gloria excitat*: Who is it whom Glory excites? the Answer is, *bonus vir*, a good Man.

P

NUMB. 2.

114 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What is the Concord of a Verb with its Nominative ;

2. *A.* A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Person ; as, *Ego lego*, I read ; *Tu scribis*, you write ; *Præceptor docet*, the Master teacheth.

Q. You said that the Verb agrees with the Nominative before it ; are there any Verbs which have a Nominative after them as well as before them ?

3. *A.* Yes ; Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Gesture, have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same Thing ; as, *Ego sum discipulus*, I am a Scholar ; *Tu vocaris Joannes*, thou art named John ; *Illa incedit regina*, she walks as a Queen.

Q. Can the Nominative be applied to every Part of the Verb ?

A. No ; none of the Tenses of the Infinitive Mood admit of a Nominative.

Q. What Case has the Infinitive Mood before it ?

4. *A.* The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it ; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, I am glad that you are well ; *Scio me peccavisse*, I know that I have sinn'd.

Q. What

NUMB. 2. *Q.* Are there any Observations upon this Concord ?

A. The Nominative of the first and second Person is often understood ; as, *non fallam, non facies, quid legimus, nihil agitis*.—But they are sometimes expressed with great Beauty and Strength in Discourse, when they are put to distinguish the Persons who performed different Actions ; as, *ego reges eeci ; vos tyrannos introducit ; ego libertatem peperì ; vos pacem servare non vultis*.—Very often the Nominative is added to the Infinitive, but then *cœpit* or *cœperunt* is understood ; as, *invidere omnes mihi, viz. cœperunt*.—The Infinitive or whole Sentence sometimes supply the Place of the Nominative ; as, *tacere est sapientium*.—Sometimes the Verb is understood ; as, *nam Polydorus ego, viz. sum*.

NUMB. 3. *Q.* Can no other Verbs have the Nominative before and after them, except those that are mentioned in the Rule ?

A. Yes ; all Verbs whatsoever may have a Nominative before and after them, when the two Nominatives belong to the same Thing ; as, *audivi hoc puer*.—When such Verbs are construed with two Nominatives of different Numbers, it commonly agrees with the first ; as, *dos est decem talenta*.—Sometimes it agrees with the last ; as, *amantium ira amoris integratio est*.

NUMB. 4. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. That the Accusative and Infinitive are sometimes resolved into the Nominative, and the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, by putting down *quod* or *ut* ; as, *equidem scio quod filius amet meus*.—But it is much more elegant to put away this

Q. What is the Construction of the Infinitive *esse*?

5. A. *Esse* hath the same Case after it that it hath before it; as, *Petrus cupit esse doctus*, Peter desires to be learned; *Scio Petrum esse doctum*, I know that Peter is learned; *Mihi esse negligenti non licet*, I am not allowed to be negligent.

Q. What is the Concord of a Relative with an Antecedent?

6. A. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number; as, *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur*, he is a wise Man who speaks little.

Q. Is it not difficult to determine the Case of the Relative?

7. A. Not very difficult; for if the Relative is joined close to the Verb, without any Nominative betwixt them, the Relative is the Nominative to the Verb; as, *Præceptor qui docet*, the Master who teacheth.

8. But when there comes a Word betwixt the Relative and the Verb, that Word is the Nominative to the Verb, and the Case

this Particle *quod* or *ut*, when it comes between two Verbs, by putting the last Verb into the Infinitive, and the Nominative, or Word before the last Verb, into the Accusative, agreeable to the Rule; as, *equidem scio meum filium amare*.

The Accusatives *me*, *te*, *se*, *illum*, are often understood; as, *reddere posse negabat*, viz. *se*.

Esse or *fuisse*, in the Perfect Infinitive Passive is often understood, and the Participle only express for the Infinitive; as, *hostium exercitum casum cognovi*.

NUMB. 5. Q. What else is remarkable in this Rule?

A. When the Verb *licet* is put before *esse*, the Infinitive hath the Dative or Accusative after it; as, Dat. *licet illis esse ignavis*. Acc. *licet esse miseros*; which agreeably to Syntax, ought to be fully express thus; *licet vobis vos esse miseros*.

Q. What is to be observed upon the Relative?

1. The Infinitive, or whole Sentence, is sometimes put for the Antecedent, and then the Relative is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *homines saepe sectantur voluptatem, quod est perniciosum*, i. e. *sectari voluptatem*.

2. The Person of the Relative is always the same with that of the Antecedent; that is, if *ego* be joined to the Relative for an Antecedent, the Verb is of the first Person; if *tu*, of the second; the same Observation holds with regard to *nos* and *vos* in the Plural Number; as, *ego qui doceo*; *tu qui discis*; *nos qui docemus*; *vos qui discitis*.——But if any other Word be joined to the Relative, the Verb is in the third Person; as, *lellio qua docetur*; *pueri qui ludunt*.

3. When the Relative comes between two Substantives of different Genders, it agrees, for the most Part, with the first; as, *Unus erat toto natura vultus in orbe, Quem dixere chaos*. Sometimes it agrees with the last; as, *animal, quem vocamus hominem*.

NUMB. 9:

116 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Case of the Relative is determined or governed by the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before; as, *Deus quem colimus*, God whom we worship; *Cujus munere vivimus*, by whose Gift we live; *Cui nullus est similis*, to whom there is none like; *A quo facta sunt omnia*, by whom all Things were made.——NOTE, The Verb or Noun, by which the Relative is governed, for ordinary comes immediately after it, but not always; as, *Cui nullus est similis*.

Q. When two or more Substantives Singular are coupled together with the Conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c. what is the Construction of the Verb, Adjective, or Relative?

9. A. The Verb, Adjective, or Relative, is put in the Plural Number; as, *Petrus & Joannes qui sunt docti*, Peter and John who are learned.

Q. What is the last Concord?

10. A. One Substantive agrees with another signifying the same Thing in Case; as, *Cicero orator*, Cicero the Orator; *Urbs Edinburgum*, the City of Edinburgh; *Filius deliciae matris suae*, a Son the Darling of his Mother.

Of

NUMB. 9. Q. What if these Singular Substantives be of different Persons?

A. If they be of different Persons, the Verb must agree with the most worthy; that is, with the first rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *ego & tu vivimus in hortum, ubi tu et meus frater legebatis Terentium, dum ego & famulus carperemus flores*.

Q. What if the Singular Substantives be of different Genders?

A. Then the Adjective or Relative Plural must agree with the most worthy; that is, with the Masculine rather than the Feminine, and the Feminine rather than the Neuter; as, *vir et femina, quos ego et tu vidimus heri, sunt mortui hodie*.——But observe, if all, or any of the Substantives signify Things without Life, the Adjective or Relative Plural must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, *divitiae, decus et gloria, sita sunt in oculis; temeritas, libido, & ignavia, sunt turbulenta*.

NUMB. 10. Q. What is observable on this Rule?

A. Two or more Substantives Singular meeting together, when joined to another Substantive, also require that it should be in the Plural Number; as, *Eupolus atque Cratinus Aristophanesque, poeta; Marco Livio et Caio Salinatore, consulibus*.

When the Substantives happen to be of different Genders, the Verb or Adjective agrees with that Substantive, which signifies a Thing that enjoys Life, rather than with another which represents a Thing that is inanimate, or without Life; as, *Tullicola, deliciae nostra, tuum munusculum flagitat*.——But if both the Substantives signify Things inanimate, the Verb or Adjective agrees with that Substantive which is most extensive in its Signification; as, *Ceroli, oppidum captum est*.

NUMB 11.

OF GOVERNMENT.

Q. WHAT are the Cases that can be governed?

A. Five; The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

Q. What is it that governs these Cases?

A. Some of the Parts of Speech, Noun, Verb, Participle, &c.

Q. What is the best Method of considering the Government of the several Parts of Speech?

A. The best Method is to consider the Parts of Speech, one after another, and to show what Case each of them require.

Q. How is Government divided according to this Plan?

A. Into the Government of Nouns, of Verbs, and Words indeclinable.

GOVERNMENT of NOUNS.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Q. What is the Government of Substantive Nouns?

II. **A.** One Substantive governs another, signifying a different Thing, in the Genitive; as, *Amor Dei*, the Love of God; *Lex naturæ*, the Law of Nature.

Q. What if the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise or Dispraise joined with it?

12. **A.** If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise or Dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative; as, *Vir summæ prudentiæ*, or *summâ prudentiâ*, a Man of great Wisdom; *Puer probæ indolis*, or *probâ indole*, a Boy of a good Disposition.

Govern.

NUMB. 11. **Q.** What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. Instead of using the last Substantive in the Genitive Case, we often use the Adjective Possessive Pronoun, agreeing with the first Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as, *paternâ domus*, for *domus patris*.

2. Very often the Dative is more elegantly used than the Genitive; as, *cui spes omnis pendet a fortuna*, for *cujus*, &c.

3. Some Substantives of this Kind are construed with Prepositions; as, *amicitia cum aliquo*; *amor in aliquem*; *cura de salute patriæ*.

NUMB. 12. **Q.** What Observations are to be made on this Rule?

A. The Adjective sometimes agrees with the first Substantive, in which Case the latter Substantive is put in the Ablative; as, *vir gravitate et prudentia præstans*.——Sometimes by the Poets, the last Substantive is put in the Accusative;

118 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Government of ADJECTIVE Nouns.

Q. What is the first Rule about Adjectives?

13. *A.* An Adjective in the Neuter Gender, without a Substantive, governs the Genitive as if it were a Substantive; as, *Multum pecuniæ*, much Money; *Quid rei*, what is the Matter? *Plurimum mali*, a great deal of Mischief.

Q. What other Adjectives govern a Genitive Case?

14. *A.* Adjectives that signify Desire, Knowledge, Ignorance, Guilt, Anxiety, and Verbals in *ax* and *us*, require the Genitive; as, *Avidus gloriæ*, desirous of Glory; *Peritus belli*, skilled in War; *Ignarus fraudis*, ignorant of Fraud; *Reus furti*, guilty of Theft; *Anxius futuri*, anxious about Futurity; *Tenax promissi*, stedfast to his Promise; *Patiens laboris*, patient under Fatigue.

Q. What is the last Rule concerning Adjectives which govern the Genitive?

15. *A.* Partitives, and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, Indefinites, and some Numerals, govern the Genitive Plural; as, *Aliquis philosophorum*, some

Accusative; as, *nec Mauris animum mitior anguib;* *os humerosque Deo similis.*——Among the Poets, Neuter and Passive Verbs are in the same Manner construed with the Accusative or Ablative; as, *et corde et genibus tremit*; *truncatus membra bipenni.*

NUMB. 13. *Q.* What Sort of Adjectives is it that are most commonly governed in that Way?

A. They are generally such as signify Quantity; as, *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *minus*, *minimum*; to which we may add the Pronouns, *id*, *hoc*, *quid* and all its Compounds; and also *summum*, *extremum*, *ultimum*, *medium*, *dimidium*; as, *summum montis.*

NUMB. 14. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. A great Number of the Adjectives of this Kind vary their Construction, by admitting of Prepositions; as, *avidus in pecuniis*; *certior factus de re*; *securus de bello*; *nulla in re rudis*; *doctus Latinis in literis.*——Sometimes they are expressd in the Ablative without a Preposition; as, *præstans ingenio*; *ferox naturâ.*

NUMB. 15. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. This Genitive is often expressd in the Ablative, with the Prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *de tot modo fratribus unus*; *unus e Stoicis*; *acerrimus ex omnibus.*——Or it is expressd in the Accusative with *ante* or *inter*; as, *inter reges opulentissimus*; *ante alios acceptissimus.*

2. Words Partitive, &c. agree in Gender with the Substantive, which they govern in the Genitive Plural, if there be no other Substantive in the Sentence; as, *nulla sororum.*——But if there be two Substantives of different Genders,

some one of the Philosophers; *lecti juvenum*, the Choice of the young Men; *Senior fratrum*, the elder of the Brothers; *Doctissimus Romanorum*, the most learned of the Romans; *Quis nostrum*, which of us? *Nemo hominum*, none of Men; *Una musarum*, one of the Muses; *Octavus sapientum*, the eighth of the wise Men.

Of the Adjectives which govern the DATIVE.

Q. What Adjectives govern the Dative?

- 16.** *A.* Adjectives signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, and a Number of other Adjectives which signify any Property or Quality, appearing in such or such a Light to any Person or Thing; as, *Benignus mihi*, kind to me; *Dulcis illi*, agreeable to him; *Conspicuum alteri*, plain to another; *Vicinum urbi*, near the City; *Obvium omnibus*, plain to all; *Par alicui*, equal to any.

Q. What

Genders, the Word governing generally agrees with the first; as, *Indus fluvium maximus*.

3. Partitives govern the Genitive Singular of collective Words; as, *præstantissimus nostra civitatis*.

NUMB. 16. **Q.** What Variety of Construction is to be met with in this Rule?

A. **1.** Some Adjectives, signifying Hatred or Friendship, are construed with *in* and the Accusative; as, *acerbus, beneficus, graciosus, liberalis, pius, impius in aliquem*.—Some also have the Accusative with the Prepositions, *in, erga, or adversus*; as, *mitis in or erga aliquem; gratus adversus aliquem*.

2. These Adjectives, *affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, aqualis, contrarius*, and *adversus*, are sometimes construed with the Genitive, and sometimes with the Dative: So is *alienus*; but this Adjective has more frequently the Ablative with *a* or *ab*; as, *humani nihil a me alienum puto*.—We read also, *pares inter se; paria cum Crasso; cum Plebe communia; consentaneum cum iis literis, quas acceperam*.

3. Adjectives signifying Usefulness, Fitness, and the contrary, often take the Accusative with *ad*; as, *utilis ad nullam rem*.

4. Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to Motion, are construed in the Accusative with the Preposition *ad*; as, *piger ad poenam*.—But *propior* and *proximus* take either the Dative or the Accusative without a Preposition; as, *propius vero; proximus huic; vitium propius virtutem; proximus Pompeium sequebatur*.

NUMB. 17.

120 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What other Adjectives govern the Dative?

17. *A.* Verbals in *bilis* and *dus*, and sometimes Passive Participles of the Perfect Tense, govern the Dative; as, *Optabilis omnibus*, to be wished for by all; *Exorandus mihi*, to be implored by me; *amatus mihi*, beloved by me; *cognitus mihi*, known by me.

Of Adjectives governing the ACCUSATIVE.

Q. What Adjectives govern the Accusative?

18. *A.* Adjectives signifying Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure; as, *Columna sexaginta pedes alta*, a Pillar sixty Foot high.

Q. Repeat the Adjectives of Dimension?

A. *Altus*, high; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep.

Q. Repeat the Names of Measure?

A. *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Hand-breadth; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace; *stadium*, a Furlong; *milliare*, a Mile.

Of Adjectives governing the ABLATIVE.

Q. What Adjectives govern the Ablative?

19. *A.* The Comparative Degree governs the Ablative; as, *Dulcior melle*, sweeter than Honey; *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Q. Is

NUMB. 17. Q. What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. Participles in *dus* have very often the Ablative with *a* or *ab*; as, *admonendum a te puto*.

Participles of the Perfect Tense take the Ablative with the Prepositions, much oftner than the Dative; as, *mors illius a multis deflata*.

NUMB. 18. Q. What Variety of Construction is there in this Rule?

A. 1. The Word of Measure is sometimes put in the Ablative; as, *fossa sex cubitis alta*.——But more especially we use the Ablative to express the Measure of Excess; that is, the Word of Measure, which determines how much one Thing exceeds or comes short of another; as, *turres denis pedibus quam murus altiores sunt*.

2. Verbs signifying Dimension, also govern the Accusative of Measure; as *patet tres ulnas*.

NUMB. 19. Q. What Remarks are to be made upon this Rule?

A. 1. The Positive Degree, with the Adverb *magis*, also governs the Ablative Case; as, *O luce magis dilecta mihi!*

2. *Quam*

Q. Is not this Ablative sometimes changed into another Case?

A. Yes; it is resolved by putting down the Particle *quam*, (*than*); as, *Dulcior quam mel*; *Præstantior quam aurum*.

Q. In what Case is the Word when this Change happens?

A. It is always of the same Case with the Noun going before it, which generally depends upon some Word in the Sentence; as, *Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem*.

Q. What other Adjectives govern an Ablative?

20. *A.* These Adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, *fretus*, *natus*, *fatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, require an Ablative; as, *Dignus honore*, worthy of Honour; *Indignus præmio*, unworthy of a Reward; *Contentus parvo*, content with little; *Præditus virtute*, endued with Virtue; *Captus oculis*, blind; *fretus viribus*, trusting to his Strength; *Natus nobili genere*, born of a noble Family; *Editus Trojana stirpe*, descended of the Trojan Race.

Of Adjectives governing Two CASES.

Q. Are there any Adjectives that govern two Cases?

21. *A.* Adjectives signifying Plenty or Want, Sharing, Depriving, Power or Weakness, and the like, govern the Genitive

2. *Quam* is elegantly put between two Comparatives; as, *triumphus clarior quam gravior*.—Observe, that *magis* and *plus* are sometimes added by Way of Redundancy to the Comparative; as, *nihil invenies magis certius*; *mitior est plus quam debet*.—After the Comparative the Preposition *pro* is often elegantly placed; as, *prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur*; *majorem quam pro flatu sonum reddebant*, viz. *silvæ*.

3. The Comparative Degree is also elegantly joined to the following Words, which are called the Ablative of Excess; viz. *tanto*, *quanto*, *eo*, *hoc*, *quo*, *multo*, *paulo*, *aliquanto*, *nihil*, *nimio*; as, *quanto majus prælium*, *tanto clarior victoria*.

NUMB. 20. *Q.* What are the Observations upon this Rule?

A. Sometimes *genitus*, *natus*, and the like Adjectives, signifying the Descent of any thing, take the Ablative with the Prepositions *e*, *ex*, or *de*; as, *ex Celtis genitus*; *Circe e Perseide*, *Oceani filia, nata*; *edita de magno Flumine*, &c.—The like Adjectives to these, are *generatus*, *prognatus*, *creatus*, *procreatus*, *cretus* &c.

To these Adjectives may be referred *opus* and *usus*, which also govern the Ablative; as, *auctoritate tua opus est*; *Nunc viribus usus*.—*Opus*, in a particular Manner, is elegantly used with the Ablative of Participles; as, *maturato, consulto, facto opus est*; *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*.—*Opus* is sometimes construed with a Substantive Noun as an Adjective; as, *dux nobis opus est*; *Omnis pollicitus est, quæ tili opus essent*; *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*.

NUMB. 21. *Q.* What is to be further observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. Some of these Adjectives govern only the Genitive; as, *benignus, exors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*.

Q

2. Some

nitive or Ablative ; as, *Inops rationis*, void of Reason ; *Inops verbis*, wanting Words ; *Plenus iræ* or *ira*, full of Anger ; *Consiliorum particeps*, privy to his Designs ; *Ratione particeps*, endued with Reason ; *Immunis delictorum*, free from Faults ; *Immunis vitiis*, free from Vices ; *Mei potens*, Master of myself ; *Potens armis*, powerful in Arms.

The GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

Verbs governing the GENITIVE.

Q. What Verbs govern the Genitive ?

22. *A.* *Sum*, when it signifies Possession, Property or Duty, governs the Genitive ; as, *Est regis punire rebelles*, it belongs to the King to punish Rebels ; *Insipientis est dicere non putaram*, it is the Property of a Fool to say I had no Thought ; *Militum est suo duci parere*, it is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

Q. Does *sum*, in this Sense, govern the Genitive of all Words ?

23. *A.* No ; *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are excepted from the Rule, and are always used in the Nominative Case after *sum* signifying Possession, Property or Duty ; as, *tuum est id procurare*, it is your Duty to manage that.

Verbs

2. Some the Ablative only ; as, *beatus*, *differtus*, *fragifer*, *mutilis*, *distentus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*.

3. Some the Genitive more frequently ; as, *compos*, *consors*, *egenus*, *exhares*, *expers*, *fertilis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prodigus*, *sterilis*.

4. Some the Ablative more frequently ; as, *abundans*, *castus*, *extorris*, *factus*, *onustus*, *oneratus*, *orbis*, *pollens*, *solutus*, *truncus*, *viduus*, *frequens*, *gravis*, *gravidus*, *jejunus*, *liber*, *locuples*, *nudus*.

5. The Genitive or Ablative indifferently ; as, *copiosus*, *dives*, *fecundus*, *ferax*, *immunis*, *inanis*, *inops*, *largus*, *maclus*, *modicus*, *immodicus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *refertus*, *purus*, *vacuus*, *uber*, *sterilis*.

6. Some of these Adjectives are construed with Prepositions ; as, *extorris a patrio solo* : *Orba ab optimatibus concio* : *Potens ad rem*.

NUMB. 23. Observe that these Possessive Nouns are also construed in the Nominative after *sum* ; *regium*, *humanum*, *beluinum*, *Romanum*, and the like ; as, *humanum est errare*.

NUMB. 24.

Q. What other Verbs govern the Genitive?

24. *A.* *Misereor, miseresco, and satago,* govern the Genitive; as, *Miserere civium tuorum,* take Pity on your Countrymen; *Satagit rerum suarum,* he has enough to do with his own affairs.

Verbs governing the DATIVE.

Q. What Verbs govern the Dative?

25. *A.* *Est* taken for *habeo,* (*to have*) governs the Dative of a Person; as, *Est mihi liber,* I have a Book; *sunt mihi libri,* I have Books.

Q. Does not this Verb *sum* often govern two Datives.

26. *A.* Yes; *sum* taken for *affero,* (*to bring*) governs two Datives, the one of a Person, the second of a Thing; as, *Est mihi voluptati,* it is a Pleasure to me.

Q. What other Verbs govern the Dative?

27. *A.* A Verb signifying Advantage or Disadvantage, and generally all Verbs, govern the Dative of the Person or Thing,

NUMB. 24. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. To the Verbs already mentioned, we may add such as signify an Affection of the Mind, which also govern the Genitive, especially among the Poets; as, *pendeo, discrucior animi; fastidit mei; decipitur laborum; lator malorum; desistere pugna; regnavit populorum.*—This Construction is entirely in Imitation of the Greeks.—The Latin Way of construing such Verbs, is rather with the Ablative, either with or without a Preposition; as, *angor, discrucior animo; lator aliqua re; abstineo a maledictis, ab aliqua re; regnare oppidis; prohibere aditu, a pugna,*

NUMB. 26. *Q.* What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. The Dative of the Person is often omitted; as, *exemplo est magni formica laboris, viz. nobis.*—Instead of the Dative of the Thing, we sometimes use the Nominative; as, *idem amor exitium est pecori, for exitio est, &c.*—In the same Manner we say, *est argumentum, or argumento; est indicium, or indicio.*

Q. Are there no other Verbs which govern two Datives, except *sum*?

A. Yes; the following, *viz. habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, forem, duco, &c., venio, mitto;* as, *sibi enim fore cetera cura: Fistula, dono mihi quam dedit olim: Tibi id laudi ducis: Quod illi tribuebatur ignavia: Ea relicta est huic arrhaboni: Timuit ne quis sibi vitio verteret: Misit mihi muneri, &c.*

NUMB. 27. *Q.* What Verbs more particularly belong to this Rule?

A. 1. The Compounds of the Verb *sum,* except *possum;* as, *omnibus negotiis praesuit, &c.*

2. Verbs

124 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Thing, to, or for whom, or for which, any Thing is done ; as, *Fortuna favet fortibus*, Fortune favours the brave; *Nemini noceas*, do hurt to no Man.

Verbs governing the ACCUSATIVE.

Q. What Verbs govern the Accusative ?

28. Verbs signifying actively, whether they be Common or Deponent Verbs; as, *Ama Deum*, love God ; *Reverere parentes*, reverence your Parents.

Q. What

2. Verbs compounded with *fatis*, *bene*, and *male* ; as, *satisfacio omnibus*.
3. Verbs that signify to *Favour* or *Hurt* ; as, *nemini noceas*.——But observe, that *lato* and *offendo*, two Verbs of this Kind, govern the Accusative.
4. To *Favour* or *Help*, and their Contraries ; as, *saveo tibi : auxilior illi*.——But *juvo* has the Accusative ; as, *juvat illum*.
5. To *Command*, *Obey*, or *Resist* ; as, *cuique imperat pecunia*.
6. To *Threaten* or be *Angry with* ; as, *minabatur mihi*.
7. To *Trust* ; as, *qui fudit sibi*.
8. Verbs compounded with these ten Prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super* ; as, *aspirat fortuna labori*, &c.——But it is to be observed, that not only the Verbs compounded with the ten Prepositions, but also many of the other Kinds above-mentioned, are construed otherwise than with the Dative ; as, *accedere muris*, *ad urbem*, *in oppidum* : *Accumbere epulis*, *in epulo* : *Acquiescere rei*, *aliqua re* : *Antecedere alicui*, *aliquem* : *Anteire alicui*, *aliquem* : *Colludere homini*, *cum homine* : *Confido rei*, *re aliqua*, *in re* : *Desperare salutis*, *de republica*, *republicam* : *Illudere alicui*, *aliquem*, *in aliquem* : *Immori studiis*, *in vino* : *Incumbere toro*, *gladium*, *in gladium* : *Inhærescere rei*, *in re* : *Obambulare muris*, *ante portas* : *Occumbere morti*, *mortem* : *Præcurrere alicui*, *aliquem* : *Præsidere urbi*, *Italiam*, *exercitum* : *Præstare omnibus*, *omnes* : *Procumbere terra*, *ad genua* : *Respondere alicui*, *ad postulata* : *subesse alicui rei*, *in re aliqua* : *Subire muro*, *testa* : *Succedere muro*, *murum*, *ad urbem*, *sub primam aciem*, *in pugnam* : *Succedere alicui*, *in locum alicujus*.

9. Many Verbs, among the Poets, govern the Dative, which by the Latins are oftner construed in the Ablative with a Preposition ; as, *Contendere amori*, *cum amore* : *Orationi vita dissentit*, *ab oratione* : *Discordat parvus avaro*, *ab avaro* : *Concurrere hosti*, *cum hoste* : *Sosistium pecori defendito*, *a pecore* : *Non intelligor ulli*, *ab ullo*.

10. These Verbs, *hortor*, *invito*, *provoco*, *pertineo*, *animo*, *specto*, *stimulo*, *conformo*, *laceſſo*, instead of the Dative, take the Accusative with the Preposition *ad* : as, *Ad laudem milites hortabatur* : *Ad cœnam invitavit* : *Provoco ad populum* : *ad quem pertinet*, &c.——Verbs signifying Motion from one Place to another, also govern the Accusative with *ad* ; such as *eo*, *vado*, *curro*, *propero*, *festino*, *pergo*, *fugio* ; &c. as, *ire ad mercatum* : *Metam properamus ad unam*.

NUMB. 28. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. Some Active Verbs vary their Construction ; as, *Appello tribunos*, *ad tribunos* : *Cavere malum*, *a malo* : *colere locum*, *in loco*.

Q. Do

Q. What Case do *recordor*, *memini*, &c. govern?

29. A. *Recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the Accusative or Genitive; as, *Recordor lectionis*, or *lectionem*, I remember my Lesson; *Obliviscor injuriæ*, or *injuriam*, I forget an Injury.

Of Verbs which govern Two CASES.

Q. What Verbs govern two Cases?

30. A. Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, Acquitting, and Admonishing, with the Accusative of a Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime or Thing; as, *Arguit me furti*, he accuses me of Theft; *Meipsum inertiae condemno*, I condemn myself of Laziness; *Illum homicidii absolvunt*, they acquit him of Man-slaughter; *Moneo te mortalitatis*, I put you in mind of Mortality.

Q. What

Q. Do Neuter Intransitive Verbs ever govern the Accusative?

A. Yes; they govern an Accusative of their own, or the like Signification; as, *vivere vitam*; *gaudere gaudium*; *sitire sanguinem*; *olere hircum*.—They also govern the Accusative, taken in a metaphorical Sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*; *Qui Curios simulant, et Bacchanalia vivunt*; *Saltare Cyclopa*.—Such Verbs, instead of the Accusative of their own or the like Signification, often admit of the Ablative; as, *nostro doluisti saepe dolore*; *bene ei, qui hoc gaudio gaudet*; *morte obiit repentina*.—After such Neuter Verbs very often there is a Preposition understood; as, *num id lachrymat virgo, viz. propter id*.

NUMB. 29. Q. What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. *Memini*, when it signifies to mention, governs the Genitive or Ablative with a Preposition; as, *hujus rei nusquam memini*; *de quibus multi meminerunt*.—*Memini*, to remember, is sometimes construed with *de*; as, *de quibus meminerunt multi*.

NUMB. 30. Q. What must we observe upon this Rule?

A. 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with or without a Preposition; as, *purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*.—*Absolvo*, *libero*, *damno*, *condemno*, are construed with the Ablative of the Crime or Punishment, without any Preposition; as, *consulem regni suspitione absolvunt: te culpâ libero*, &c.—The Words *caput* and *crimen* are also used after such Verbs in the Ablative Case; as, *condemnabo te eodem crimine: Ne ob eam rem capite damnarer*.—They are also often construed in the Genitive; as, *eum multorum criminum postulavit: Capitis damnatus est*.

2. These Verbs of Accusing, *carpo*, *corripio*, *culpo*, *reprehendo*, *taxo*, *traduco*, *vitupero*, *calumnior*, *crimino*, &c. are not construed with the Genitive of the Crime, but vary the Construction in this Way; as, *culpare alicujus pertinaciam*, *reprehendere avaritiam*, &c.

3. Verbs of Admonishing, in Place of the Genitive, make use of the Ablative with *de*; as, *ut Terentiam moneatis de testamento*; *de quo vos admonui*.—Sometimes they admit of two Accusatives; as, *sed eos hoc moneo, desinant furere*.

NUMB. 31.

126 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What other Verbs govern two Cases?

31. *A.* Verbs of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and taking away, govern the Accusative with the Dative; as, *Compare Virgilium Homero*, I compare Virgil to Homer; *Suum cuique tribuito*, give every Man his Due; *Narras fabulam surdo*, you tell a Story to a deaf Man; *Eripuit me morti*, he rescued me from Death.

Q. What is the last Rule concerning Verbs which govern two Cases?

32. *A.* Verbs of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, the second of a Thing; as, *Posce Deum veniam*, beg Pardon of God; *Docuit me grammaticam*, he taught me Grammar.

Of

NUMB. 31. *Q.* Are there not many other Verbs which govern the Accusative with the Dative?

Q. Yes; to the Verbs mentioned in the Rule, may be added a great many Active Verbs, compounded with the Prepositions *ad*, *in*, *ob*, *pro*, *sub*, which cannot be reduced to distinct Classes; as, *adjuugo*, *inscribo*, *oppono*, &c.—— In short, any Active Verb may govern the Dative with the Accusative, when, together with the Thing done, is also signified the Person or Thing to, or for whom, or which it is done.

Q. Do not some Verbs of this Kind vary the Construction?

A. Yes; *comparo*, *compono*, *confero*, oftener take the Ablative with *cum*; as, *ut hominem cum homine comparetis*: *Dicta cum factis componere*: *Conferre hanc pacem cum illo bello*.——Also Verbs of Taking away, instead of the Dative, take frequently the Ablative with *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*; as, *ab hoc omnia eripuit*: *eripite nos ex miseriis*: *De magnis divitiis si quid demas*.——Among the Poets the Preposition is sometimes not express; as, *vaginaeque eripit enses*.

NUMB. 32. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. The Verb *celo* also governs two Cases; as, *celo hanc rem uxorem*. But we also say, *celo te de hac re*, and *celo hanc rem tibi*.

Q. Do not these Verbs often vary this Construction?

A. 1. Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into the Ablative, with *a*, *ab*, or *abs*; as, *ab amico argentum roges*: *Quid studia a te flagitent*, *videbis*: *Veniam creemus ab ipso*: *Res est, quam volo me abs te exorare*.

2. Verbs of Teaching frequently change the Accusative of the Thing into the Ablative with *de*; as, *quid est tam arrogans, quam de rebus divinis collegium Pontificum docere*?

3. These Verbs, *instruo*, *instituo*, *formo*, *informo*, *imbuo*, are construed with the Ablative without a Preposition; as, *imbuere aliquem artibus*, &c.

4. There are other Verbs of a different Kind from these already mentioned, which admit of two Accusatives: as, *argentum, quod habes, condonamus te*: *Scin' quid ego te volebam*.

NUMB. 33.

OF PASSIVE Verbs.

Q. How are Passive Verbs construed?

33. A. They take after them an Ablative, governed by the Prepositions *a, ab* or *abs*; as, *Laudatur ab his*, he is praised by them; *A nobis diligitur*, he is beloved by us; *Meum factum probatur abs te*, my Action is approved of by thee.

Q. What Case is put after Passive Verbs which govern two Cases in the Active Voice?

34. A. The Passives of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as, *Accusor furti*, I am accused of Theft; *Virgilius comparatur Homero*, Virgil is compared to Homer; *Doceor grammaticam*, I am taught Grammar.

Construction

NUMB. 33. Q. What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. 1. Instead of this Ablative they are sometimes construed with the Dative; as, *neque cernitur ulli*.—Sometimes with the Accusative and *per*; as, *non existimaram fratrem meum per te oppugnatum iri*.

Q. What more is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. Many other Verbs are construed with this Ablative and the Prepositions *a* or *ab*; such as, Verbs of *Receiving*, *Differing*, Verbs that express *Distance*, Verbs of *Asking*, *Intreating*, *Refraining*, *Expecting*, *Removing*, *Sending away*, *Disjoining* and *Buying from*; as, *quantum distat argumentatio a veritate*, &c.

2. These Adjectives, *alius*, *alter*, *alienus*, *diversus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, are also construed with the Ablative and *a* or *ab*; as, *nec quicquam aliud a libertate diversum quaesivimus*; *tu nunc eris alter ab illo*; *alieno a te animo fuit*; *secundus a rege habetur*.

3. Other Verbs again are construed with the Ablative after them, and the Preposition *cum*: as, *contendo*, *certo*, *pugno cum*.—Tho' we also read *contendere contra*, or *adversus aliquem*, *inter se*.—The Verb *mereor* has the Ablative with *de*; as, *bene mereri de aliquo*.—Also *facio*, *fio*, *futurum est*; tho' these last have oftener the Ablative without the Preposition; as, *quid hoc homine faciatis?*—After Verbs of *Understanding* or *Perceiving* we find the Ablative with *ex*; as, *intellexi ex tuis literis*.

NUMB. 34. By Virtue of this Rule, the Passives of Verbs of *Accusing*, *Condemning*, &c. have the Genitive.—The Passives of Verbs of *Comparing*, *Giving*, &c. have the Dative.—The Passives of Verbs of *Asking* and *Teaching* have the Accusative of the Thing.

Q. Is there any Thing else to be observed about Passive Verbs?

A. The Passives of Verbs that signify *to cloath*, or *throw off the Cloaths*, are often construed by the Poets in the Accusative; as, *Protinus induitur faciem vultumque Dianae*; *Inutile ferrum cingitur*; *Verum ardens puero, castumque exuta pudorem*.—Sometimes they take the Ablative; as, *Hispano cingitur gladio*.

NUMB. 36.

128 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Construction of Verbs of PRICE.

Q. In what Case is the Price of a Thing exprest by the Latins ?

35. *A.* The Price of a Thing is governed in the Ablative, by any Verb ; as, *Emi librum duobus assibus*, I bought a Book for two Shillings ; *vendidit hic auro patriam*, this Man sold his Country for Gold ; *Demosthenes docuit talento*, Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

Q. What Words are excepted from the foregoing Rule ?

36. *A.* *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, which are always put in the Genitive when they stand for the Price of a Thing ; as, *Quanti constitit*, how much cost it ? *Asses & pluris*, a Shilling and more.

Q. Are there any other Verbs which are construed with these Genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris* ?

37. *A.* Yes ; Verbs of Valuing, besides the Accusative of the Person, govern not only these four Genitives, but the following : *magni, minimi, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, focci, pili, assis, teruncii, hujus*.—Also *æqui* and *boni*, after *facio* and *consulo* ; as, *Æstimo te magni*, I value you much, &c.

Of Verbs which govern the ABLATIVE.

Q. What Verbs govern the Ablative ?

38. *A.* Verbs of Plenty or Scarceness, for the most Part, govern the Ablative ; as, *Caret omni culpa*, he has no Fault ; *Abundat divitiis*, he abounds in Riches.

Q. What

NUMB. 36. *Q.* What is observable about these Genitives, *tanti, quanti*, &c.

A. 1. When the Substantive is exprest, they are put in the Ablative ; as, *quanto pretio, minore mercede*.

2. These Adjectives, *magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often exprest in the Ablative without a Substantive ; as, *parvo sumes constat, magno fastidium*.

3. Properly speaking, the Ablative of Price is not governed by the Verb, but by the Preposition *pro*, which is sometimes, tho' very rarely exprest ; as, *dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*.

NUMB. 37. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. The Verb *æstimo*, instead of the Genitive, takes sometimes these Ablatives, *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo* ; as, *data magno æstimas, accepta parvo*.

—We say also, *pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

NUMB. 38. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* often, and sometimes *impleo, compleo, and expleo*, take the Genitive ; as, *egere auxilii : Opes indigent : Adolescentem sue temeritatis im-*

plet :

Q. What other Verbs govern the Ablative?

39. *A. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the Ablative; as, *Utitur fraude*, he uses Deceit; *Abutitur libris*, he abuses books.

Government of IMPERSONAL Verbs.

Q. What Case do Impersonal Verbs govern?

40. Impersonal Verbs govern the Dative; as, *Expedit rei publicæ*, it is expedient for the Commonwealth; *Licet nemini peccare*, it is allowed no Man to sin.

Q. What

piet: Cum completus jam mercatorum carcer esset: Animumque expleffe juvabit ultricis flammæ.

2. The following Verbs also govern the Ablative without a Preposition: Verbs of Loading, Unloading, Binding, Loosing, Depriving, Spoiling, and Cloathing; as, *naves onerant auro: Amicos ægritudine levavit: Vinculis astringere: Omnis se solvit Teucra luctu: Omnibus orbat sensibus: Emunxi senes argento: Ut alii calcearent foccis.*—But Verbs of Loosing have frequently the Prepositions *a, ab, e, or ex*, added to the Ablative; as, *arcem urbis ab incendio liberavi: Laxare animum a laboribus: Solvere naves e portu.*

NUMB. 39. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. To these Verbs may be added, *nitor, innitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, remunero, vivo, communico, visito, pasco, epulor, beo, fido, confido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, sto, consto, confisto, prosequor, spargo, cedo, incesso, insector, supersedeo, glorior, lator, oblecto, delector, laboro.*—To some of these Verbs, such as *consto, laboro, nitor*, the Preposition is frequently added; as, *cum constemus ex animo et corpore, &c.* *Potiri* sometimes governs the Genitive; as, *potiri urbis, potiri rerum, &c.*

Q. Do not some of these Verbs vary the Construction still farther?

A. Yes; we say *dono te equo, & tibi equum: Communicare rem alicui, cum aliquo.*

NUMB. 40. Q. What is to be observed about Impersonal Verbs?

A. Besides the Dative, they have often an Infinitive, which, as it were, supplies the Place of a Nominative; as, *cui peccare licet, peccat minus*; which is the same as if it were, *cui peccatum licet.*—But Impersonal Verbs do actually sometimes receive a Nominative in the third Person, especially the Pronouns *id, hoc, illud, quod*, and the like; as, *sin tibi id minus licebit: Si habes, quod liqueat, neque respondes, superbis.*

130 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Do not all Imperſonal Verbs govern the Dative?

41. A. No; *refert* and *interest* require the Genitive; as, *Refert patris*, it concerns my Father; *Interest omnium*, it is the Interest of all.

Q. Do these two Verbs govern all Words in the Genitive?

42. A. All; except *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *noſtra*, *veſtra*, which are put in the Accuſative Plural after theſe Verbs; as, *non mea refert*, I am not concerned.

Q. Are there any more Rules about Imperſonal Verbs?

43. A. Theſe five, *miferet*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the Accuſative of the Perſon with the Genitive; as, *Miferet me tui*, I pity you; *Pœnitet me peccati*, I am ſorry for my Fault; *Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of my Life.

Q. What is the laſt Rule concerning Imperſonal Verbs?

44. A. Theſe four, *deceat*, *delectat*, *juvat*, *oportet*, govern the Accuſative of a Perſon with the Infinitive; as, *Delectat me*

NUMB. 41. Q. What is to be obſerved upon the Rule about *refert* and *interest*?

A. 1. Beſides other Genitives, *refert* and *interest* admit alſo of theſe, *tanti*, *quantum*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris*; as, *magni refert*, *magni interest*, &c.

2. They not only take the Nominatives of the Pronouns *quid*, *quod*, *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, but other Nominatives ſometimes, as if they were Perſonal Verbs; as, *tua quod nil refert*, *percontari deſinas*: *Uſque adeo magni refert ſtudium atque voluntas*: *Inceſſus in gravidâ refert*.

3. Very often, in the Place of Adverbs, they admit theſe Words, *tantum*, *quantum*, *multum*, *plurimum*, *inſinitum*, *parum*, *maxime*, *minime*, and the like; as, *plurimum intererit*, *quibus hunc artibus iſtituas*, &c.

4. Inſtead of the Genitive, they ſometimes take the Accuſative with *ad*; as, *magni ad honorem noſtrum interest*: *Quam ad rem iſthuc refert*.—Some-times the Dative is found inſtead of the Genitive, but ſeldom; as, *Dic quid referat intra natura ſines viventi*, *jugera centum an mille aret*.

NUMB. 43. Q. What is obſervable upon this Rule?

A. 1. This Genitive is often ſupplied by the Infinitive; as, *quem pœnitet peccâſſe*, for *peccati*.

2. The Accuſative of the Perſon is often underſtood; as, *ſclerum ſi bene pœnitet*, viz. *nos*.

3. Theſe Verbs are ſometimes uſed perſonally, with Nominatives, eſpecially with the Pronouns, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. as, *ipſe ſui miferet*: *Et me quidem hac conditio nunc non pœnitet*.

NUMB. 44. Q. What is to be obſerved concerning this Rule?

A. *Decet*, *delectat*, and *juvat*, often take the Nominative in the third Perſon, as if they were perſonal Verbs; as, *haud tales deceat inclementia vultus*: *Me ſtatus hic reipublica non delectat*: *Si damnosa ſenem juvat alea*, *ludit et hæres*.

2. Inſtead

me studere, it delights me to study; *Non decet te rixari*, it does not become you to scold.

Government of one VERB with another.

Q. When two Verbs come together, how is the second governed by the first?

45. A. One Verb governs another in the Infinitive; as, *Cupio discere*, I desire to learn.

Govern-

2. Instead of the Accusative, *decet* sometimes takes the Dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*.

3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mood, *ut* being understood; as, *oportet facias*, for *oportet te facere*.

4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, are also used like Impersonal Verbs, and construed with the Accusative and the Infinitive; as, *fugit me ad te scribere*, &c.

5. These three Verbs, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, when used Impersonally, which seldom happens, have the Accusative with *ad*; as, *pereat, nihil ad me attinet*: *Ad rempublicam pertinet me conservari*: *Spectat ad omnes bene vivere*.

NUMB. 45. Q. What is observable upon this Rule?

A. 1. Sometimes the Infinitive is governed by Adjectives or Participles; as, *cupidus & cupiens discere*.—Sometimes it appears to depend upon Substantive Nouns; as, *consilium cepit equitatum dimittere*.

2. The Verb governing the Infinitive is often understood; as, *adeone hominem esse invenimus, aut infelicem quemquam, ut ego sum*; viz. *credibile est*.

3. The Infinitive is frequently used like a Substantive thro' all the Cases; as, Nom. *Latrocinari, fraudare, adulterari, turpe est*. Gen. *Soli cantare periti Arcades*, for *cantandi*. Dat. *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus*, for *calamis inflandis, versibus dicendis*. Acc. *Pulchra Laverna, da mihi fallere*, that is, *artem fallendi*. Voc. *O vivere nostrum*, for *O vita nostra*. Abl. *Et erat tum dignus amari, for amore*.

Q. Do not some Verbs, in place of the Infinitive, take a different Construction?

A. 1. Verbs that signify *Inclination, Commanding, Beseeching*; or generally, such as signify any Thing about to happen, have either the Infinitive or the Substantive Mood with *ut*; as, *vis me uxorem ducere*; or *ut uxorem ducam*: *Modo liceat vivere, est spes*; or *ut vivamus*.

2. *Dubito*, and *dubium est*, sometimes have the Infinitive after them, but oftner the Subjunctive with *an, num, utrum, quin*; as, *diu dubitavit, imperium deponeret an bello resisteret*: *Non dubito quin mirere*: *Non dubium est, quin uxorem molit filius*.

3. Verbs which express *Fear*; as, *timeo, metus, vereor*, when any Thing is affirmed, are construed with *ne* and the Subjunctive Mood; as, *timet ne deferat se*. But in a negative Sense they take the Subjunctive with *ut*, or *ne non*; as, *verbamini ne id non facerem*: *Videris vereri, ut epistolas illas acceperim*, that is, *ne non acceperim*.—Sometimes they have the Infinitive, but seldom; as, *metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*.

4. After

132 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Government of PARTICIPLES.

Q. What is the Government of Participles?

46. A. Participles govern the Case of their Verbs; as, *A-mans virtutem*, loving Virtue; *Carens fraude*, wanting Guile.

Government of GERUNDS.

Q. Do Gerunds govern any Case?

47. A. Gerunds also govern the Case of their Verbs; as, *Con-silium occupandi locum*, a Design of seizing upon a Place; *Utendum est ætate*, we should make the most of Life.

Q. Is

4. After these Verbs, *spero*, *puto*, *affirmo*, *suspicio*, and the like, we elegantly make use of *fore* or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive Mood; as, *numquam putavi fore, ut ad te supplex venirem*; for *numquam putavi me ad te supplicem fuisse venturum*: *Scio futurum, ut cupiatis multos audire*.

NUMB. 46. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. Verbal Nouns, as well Substantives as Adjectives, sometimes govern the Case of their Verbs; as, *justitia est obtemperatio divinis legibus*: *Studiosus adulterio*.—Thus also Participials in *bundus*; as, *gratulabundus patriæ*: *Vitabundus castra hostium*.

Q. Is not the Construction of some Participles to be more particularly observed?

A. Yes; 1. *Exosus*, *perosus*, always, and *pertasus* often, govern the Accusative; as, *tedas exosa jugales*: *Plebs consulum nomen perosa*: *Pertasus suam ignaviam*.—But *pertasus* sometimes takes the Genitive; as, *lentitudinis eorum pertasus*.

2. These Verbs *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, when construed with the Perfect Participle in the Accusative, supply the Place of the Future or some other Tense of the Verb, whose Participle is thus used; as, *effectum dabo*, that is, *efficiam*: *Age, age, inventas reddam*, that is, *inveniam*: *Vos oratos volo*, that is, *vos oro*: *Inventum curabo*, that is, *inveniam*, &c.

3. These Verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *accipio*, *mitto*, *relinquo*, and the like, in Place of the Infinitive or Subjunctive, make use of the Future Participle in *dus*, which agrees with the Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; as, *funus ei satis amplum faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*: *Illud habeo præcipiendum*, for *præcipere*, or *quod præcipiam*: *Gladiatores vi rapiendos curavit*, for *rapi*, or *ut raperentur*.

NUMB. 48.

Q. Is there not a particular Way of construing the Gerund in *dum* with the Verb *est*?

48. *A.* The Gerund in *dum*, of the Nominative Case, with the Verb *est*, governs the Dative; as, *Moriendum est omnibus*, all must die; *Vivendum est mihi recte*, I must live well.

Q. How is the Gerund in *di* construed?

49. *A.* The Gerund in *di* is governed by Substantives or Adjectives; as, *Tempus legendi*, Time of reading; *Cupidus discendi*, desirous of learning.

Q. How is the Gerund in *do*, of the Dative Case, construed?

50. *A.* The Gerund in *do*, of the Dative Case, is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness; as, *Charta utilis scribendo*, Paper useful for writing.

Q. How is the Gerund in *dum*, of the Accusative Case, construed?

51. *A.* The Gerund in *dum*, of the Accusative Case, is governed by the Prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as, *Promptus ad audiendum*, ready to hear; *Attentus inter docendum*, attentive in the Time of teaching.

Q. How

NUMB. 48. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. The Dative is often understood; as, *hic, milites, vincendum aut moriendum est, viz. vobis*.—When any other Verb goes before this Gerund, it is put in the Accusative with *esse*; as, *quotidie meditare resistendum esse iracundie*.

NUMB. 49. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. Instead of the Gerund in *di*, the Poets sometimes make use of the Infinitive; as, *tempus abire*, for *abundi*: *Occasio scribere*, for *scribendi*: *Cupidus mori*, for *moriendi*.—Sometimes for the Gerund in *di*, they use the Gerund in *dum*, with *ad*; as, *argumentum ad scribendum*, for *scribendi*.—The Gerund in *di* is sometimes found with the Genitive Plural, instead of the Accusative; as, *facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi*.

NUMB. 50. *Q.* What is to be observed about the Gerund in *do* of the Dative Case?

A. The Adjective is sometimes understood; as, *cum solvendo civitates non essent, viz. pares, or habiles*.—This Gerund seems also to be governed by Verbs; as, *Epidicum querendo dabo operam: Simul aptat habendo enssem clypeumque*.

NUMB. 51. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. When another Verb goes before this Gerund, the Infinitive *esse* is often understood; as, *qui dicerent dignitati serviendum, reipublicæ consulendum, viz. esse*.—Sometimes this Gerund is governed by *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*; as, *plus eloquentia circa movendum valet: Quanto illud flagitiosius, cum à quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare*.

NUMB. 52.

134 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. How do you construe the Gerund 'in *do* of the Ablative Case?

52. *A.* The Gerund in *do*, of the Ablative Case, is governed by the Prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Pæna a peccando absterret*, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Q. Is it not sometimes exprest in the Ablative without a Preposition?

53. *A.* Yes; it is exprest without a Preposition, in the Ablative of Manner or Cause; as, *Memoria excolendo auge- tur*, the Memory is improved by Exercise; *Defessus sum am- bulando*, I am weary with walking.

Q. Are not Gerunds sometimes changed into Participles in *dus*?

54. *A.* Yes; Gerunds governing the Accusative are elegantly changed into Participles in *dus*, which agree with their Sub- stantives in Gender, Number and Case; as, *Petendum est pacem*, *Petenda est pax*; *Tempus petendi pacem*, *Tempus petendæ pacis*; *Ad petendum pacem*, *Ad petendam pacem*; *A petendo pacem*, *A petenda pace*.

Of the SUPINES.

Q. What Case do Supines govern?

55. *A.* Supines govern the Case of their own Verbs; as, *misit rogatum pacem*, he sent to ask Peace.

Q. After what Verbs do we use the Supine in *um*?

56. The Supine in *um* is put after a Verb of Motion; as, *Ab- iit deambulatum*, he went out to walk.

Q. How

NUMB. 52. *Q.* What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. Sometimes the Gerund in *do* is governed by *pro* and *cum*, but seldom; as, *heu senex! pro vapulando hercle ego abs te mercedem petam: Ratio rectè scri- bendi juncta cum loquendo est.*

NUMB. 54. *Q.* Are any other Gerunds construed this Way?

A. Yes; the Gerunds of *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*; as, *illa ætas ad hæc utenda magis idonea est: Justitia fruenda causâ videntur olim reges constituti: Cu- gus urbis potiunda cupido eum cepit.*

NUMB. 56. *Q.* Is not this Construction sometimes varied?

A. Yes; the Supine in *um* is varied in the following Manner, viz. *Specula- tum veniunt*, or *ut spectent: Venit oratum opem: Venit opem orandi causâ: Venit opis orandæ causâ: Venit ad orandum opem: Ad orandam opem: Opi oranda: O- pem oraturus: Qui oret opem: Orare opem.*

NUMB 57.

Q. How do you construe the Supine in *u*?

57. The Supine in *u* is put after an Adjective Noun; as, *Facile dictu*, easy to tell or to be told; *dignum memoratu*, worthy to be mentioned.

Construction of the Cause, Manner, and Instrument.

Q. How do the *Latins* express the Cause, Manner and Instrument?

58. A. The Cause, Manner and Instrument are put in the Ablative; as, *Palleo metu*, I am pale for Fear; *Scribo calamo*, I write with a Pen; *Fecit suo more*, he did it after his own Way.

Con-

NUMB. 57. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. The Supine in *u* is also put after Substantives; as, *si hoc fas est dictu*.—It is also put after Verbs of Motion, when Motion from a Place is signified; as, *nunc obsonatu redeo*: *Primus villicus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum eat*: *At nunc venatu rediturum se ait*.—It may also be varied by the Infinitive; as, *ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci facilia*; and by the Gerund in *dum*; as, *hec ad judicandum facillima*, for *judicatu*; and by Verbal Nouns; as, *quod in rebus honestis et cognitione dignis operæ ponetur, id jure laudabitur*, for *cognitu*.

NUMB. 58. Q. What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. 1. The Cause is known by the Question *cur* or *quare*, why? As, (to use the Examples in the Rule) *Why was you afraid?* for Fear: The Manner is known by the Question *quomodo*, how? as, *How did he do it?* After his own Way or Manner. And the Instrument by the Question, *wherewith?* as, *Wherewith, or with what do you write?* I write with a Pen.

2. The Cause is sometimes express'd in the Accusative with *per* or *propter*; as, *per lachrymas flesti solet*: *Legibus propter metum paret*.—Or it is express'd in the Ablative with *de*, *e*, *ex*, *præ*; as, *nisi gravi de causa non fecisset*: *Cum e via languerem*: *Ex doctrina nobilis*: *Loqui præ mœrore non potuit*.

3. The Manner is frequently express'd by *cum*; as, *magno cum metu dicere incipio*.—Sometimes with *de*, *ex*, or *per*; as, *sólito de more locuta est*: *Bene obsonavi, atque ex mea sententia*: *Quod adeptus est per scelus, per luxuriam effundit*.

4. The Instrument seldom or never admits the Preposition *cum*, but it is express'd sometimes with *a* or *ab*, by the Poets; as, *hi jaculo pisces, illi capiuntur ab hamo*.—But observe that *cum* is generally express'd with the Ablative of Concomitancy; which implies, that something is in Company with another; as, *ingressus est cum gladio*.

5. To the Cause may be referred the Matter of which any Thing is made; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato substructum*: *Ære cavo clypeus*.—But with these the Preposition is more frequently express'd; as, *pocula ex auro*: *Candelabrum factum e gemmis*.

6. To the Manner may be referred the Means by which any Thing is brought about; as, *amicos observantiâ, rem parsimoniâ retinuit*.

NUMB. 59.

136 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Construction of the Names of TOWNS.

Q. How are the Names of Towns construed ;

59. The Names of Towns are put in the Genitive when the Question is made by *ubi* (where ;) as, *Vixit Romæ*, he lived at Rome ; *Mortuus est Londini*, he died at London.

Q. What is the most remarkable Exception from this Rule ?

60. *A.* If the Name of a Town be of the third Declension, or Plural Number, it is exprest in the Ablative, tho' the Question be made by *ubi* ; as, *Habitat Carthagine*, he dwells at Carthage ; *Studuit Parisiis*, he studied at Paris.

Q. What happens when the Question is made by *quo* (whither ?)

61. *A.* The Name of a Town is put in the Accusative ; as, *Venit Edinburgum*, he came to Edinburgh ; *Profectus est Athenas*, he went to Athens.

Q. What happens when the Question is made by *unde*, (whence) or *qua*, (by, or through what Place ?)

62. *A.* When the Question is made by *qua*, (by, or through what Place,) or *unde* (whence,) the Name a Town is put in the Ablative ; as, *Discessit Aberdonia*, he went from Aberdeen ; *Laodicea iter faciebat*, he passed through Laodicea.

Q. Is

NUMB. 59. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are also used in the Genitive ; as, *qui legitis flores et humi nascentia fraga : Una semper militiæ et domi fuimus.*

NUMB. 62. *Q.* What is to be remarked on this Rule ?

A. 1. When the Question is made by *qua*, the Name of a Town is often put in the Accusative with *per*, to prevent Ambiguity and Mistake ; as, *cum iter per Thebas faceret.*

2. The Rules about Names of Towns may be thus exprest : The Name of a Town after *in* or *at*, is put in the Genitive, unless it be of the third Declension or Plural Number, and then it is exprest in the Ablative : The Name of a Town after *to* or *unto*, is put in the Accusative ; after *from* or *through*, in the Ablative.

3. Names of Towns, notwithstanding, are frequently construed with Prepositions, especially when Appellatives or Adjectives are added to them ; as, *in oppido Edinburgo : Ad doctas Athenas proficiscitur* ; or when we are not in the Place, but near it ; as, *dum hæc ad Ilerdam geruntur.*

NUMB. 63.

Q. Is there no particular Rule about *domus* and *rus*?

63. A. Yes; *domus* and *rus* are construed like Names of Towns; as, *Manet domi*, he stays at Home; where *domi* is in the Genitive, because the Question is made by *ubi*, (where.) *Revertitur domum*, he returns Home; in the Accusative, because the Question is made by *quo*, (whither.) *Domo arcessitus sum*, I am sent for from Home; in the Ablative, because the Question is *unde*, (whence.) *Vivit rure*, he lives in the Country; in the Ablative, because, tho' the Question is made by *ubi*, *rus* is of the third Declension. —In the same Manner *Abiit rus*, *Rediit rure*, may be accounted for.

Q. How are Names of Provinces, Countries, and other Places construed?

64. A. To Names of Countries, Provinces, and other Places, the Preposition is commonly added; as, *in Italia*, *in Asiam*, *ab Europa*, *per Cappadociam*.

Q. In

NUMB. 63. Q. What is observable upon this Rule?

A. Only these Adjectives, *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, *aliena*, are used in the Genitive, with *domi*; as, *apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi mea*, &c. — But with other Adjectives we use the Ablative, and the Preposition *in*, which is sometimes express, and sometimes understood; as, *in domo paterna*, *in domo regia*, not *domi paterna*.

When the Question is made by *quo*, (whither,) and the Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuius*, *suius*, &c. are added to *domus*, it may be express in the Accusative, either with or without a Preposition; as, *recta a porta domum meam venerunt*: *Neque hoc admiror, quod non ad tuam, sed illud, quod non ad suam*. — When *domus* is joined with other Adjectives, the Preposition is almost always express; as, *omnes ad eam domum profecti sunt*: *Si in domum meretriciam deducar*. — *Domos* in the Accusative Plural, with the foregoing Possessives, is commonly found without the Preposition; as, *alius alium domos suas invitant*. — But *domos*, with other Adjectives, generally has the Preposition added; as, *quibus aqua in privatas domos inducitur*: *Inque domos superas scandere cura fuit*. — *Rura*, in the Plural, always requires the Preposition; as, *que inducuntur in rura, ut oves et armenta*.

NUMB. 64. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. Sometimes the Prepositions are omitted before Names of Countries, &c. as, *Ubi? Cum audisset Pompeium Cypri visum: Quo? Inde Sarciniam cum classe venit: Unde? Litera Macedonia allata: Qua? Nunc tota Asia vagatur*.

2. *Peto*, when it signifies *to go*, governs the Name of any Place in the Accusative without a Preposition; as, *Lacedaemona classe petebat: Aegyptium petere decrevit*.

138 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. In what Case do the *Latins* put the Distance of one Place from another?

65. A. The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftner in the Accusative; as, *Iter vel itinere unius diei*, one Day's Journey; *Glasœua distat Edinburgo triginta millia passuum*, Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from *Edinburgh*.

Q. What is the first Rule concerning Time?

66. A. Time is put in the Ablative when the Question is made by *quando*, (when?) as, *Venit hora tertia*, he came at three o'Clock.

Q. What is the second Rule about Time?

67. A. When the Question is made by *quamdiu*, (how long?) Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftner in the Accusative; as, *Mansit paucos dies*, he staid a few Days; *Abfuit sex mensibus*, he was away six Months.

OF the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

Q. What is the Rule about this Ablative?

68. A. A Substantive with a Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, is put in the Ablative absolute; as, *Sole oriente*,

NUMB. 66. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. The Prepositions *in* or *ab* are frequently added to this Ablative; as, *in tempore veni*: *In undecimo mense*: *Surgunt de nocte latrones*: *In hoc triduo*: *Fere in diebus paucis*, *Chrysis vicina hæc moritur*.

2. Sometimes we find the Accusative with the Prepositions *ad*, *per*, or *inter*; as, *te ad mensem Januarium expectamus*: *Præsto fuit ad horam destinatam*: *Per idem tempus*: *Intra paucos dies mortuus est*.

3. When *abhinc* is added, we may either use the Accusative or Ablative, without a Preposition; as, *hoc factum est abhinc ferme biennium*: *Abhinc quatuor annis*.

NUMB. 67. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. Sometimes the Prepositions *per*, *ad*, *in*, *inter* or *intra*, are added to this Accusative; as, *per annos decem aluimus*: *Bestiæ ex se natos ad quoddam tempus amant*: *Habebit senatus in hunc annum quem sequatur*: *Qui intra annos quatuordecim tella non subierunt*.

NUMB. 68. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. 1. The Participle *existente*, or *existentibus*, is often understood, and must be supplied to the Noun or Pronoun; as, *te consule*, that is, *te existente consule*: *Nobis consulibus*, viz. *existentibus*.

2. Sometimes only the Participle is express'd, and the Substantive *negotio* understood; as, *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera latus*. The Participles understood,

oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, the Sun rising, or when the Sun riseth, Darkness flies away; *Opere peractio, ludemus*, our Work being finished, we will play.

Construction of ADVERBS.

Q. What is the first Rule about Adverbs?

69. A. Some Adverbs of Time, Place, and Quantity, govern the Genitive; as, *Pridie illius diei*, the Day before that Day; *Ubique gentium*, every where; *Satis est verborum*, there is enough of Words.

Q. What is the second Rule concerning Adverbs?

70. A. Some Adverbs derived or formed from other Words, govern the Case of the Words from which they are formed; as, *Omnium elegantissimè loquitur*, he speaks the most elegantly of all; *Vivere convenienter naturæ*, to live agreeably to Nature.

Of

stood, are chiefly these of the Present and Perfect Tense. The Future Participle in *rus* is seldom used in this Way.

Q. Is not this Ablative sometimes resolved into another Case?

A. Yes; it is sometimes resolved into a Nominative, agreeing with the Verb in the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood, having the Particles *cum, dum, quando, postquam, si, quoniam*, or the like, added to it; as, *Superbo regnante*; that is, *cum, dum, quando Superbus regnabat*, &c.——In this Case, the Signs of the Ablative absolute in English are, *whilst, when, after*; the other Signs are *having* or *being*.

NUMB. 69. Q. What is to be observed upon this Rule?

A. Among these Adverbs are commonly reckoned *ergo* for *causa*, *instar*, *partim*: as, *donari virtutis ergo: Instar montis: Partim sum earum exactus*.

2. *Pridie* or *postridie* govern either the Accusative or Genitive; as, *Pridie* or *postridie Idus, Nonas, Kalendas*, seldom *Kalendarum*.

3. Also the Adverbs *en, ecce*, take the Nominative or Accusative; as, *En causa, cur dominum servus accuset: En Paradis hostem*.

NUMB. 70. Q. What is to be observed on this Rule?

A. In the first Example, *omnium* is in the Genitive, because the governing Word *elegantissimè* comes from the Superlative *elegantissimus*, which by a preceding Rule governs the Genitive Plural.——In the last Example the Dative, *naturæ*, is governed by *convenienter*, because *conveniens*, the Word from which it is formed, is an Adjective signifying *Profit*, &c. and governs the Dative.

Q. What

140 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of the PREPOSITIONS.

Q. What Case do Prepositions govern?

71. A. The Prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the Accusative; as, *Ad patrem*, to the Father.
72. The Prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the Ablative; as, *A patre*, from the Father.
73. The Prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the Accusative, when Motion to a Place is signified; as, *Eo in scholam*, I go into the School; *Sub mœnia tendit*, he goes under the Walls; *Incidit super agmina*, it fell upon the Troops; *Ducit subter fastigia tecti*, he brings him under the Roof of the House.
74. But if Motion or Rest in a Place be signified, *in* and *sub* govern the Ablative, *super* and *subter* the Accusative or Ablative; as, *Sedeo vel discuro in schola*, I sit or run up and down in the School; *Recubo vel ambulo sub umbra*, I ly or walk under the Shade; *Sedens super arma*, sitting above the Arms; *Frønde super viridi*, upon the green Grass; *Vena subter cutem*, Veins under the Skin: *Subter littore*, beneath the Shore.

Q. What

Q. What is to be observed about Prepositions?

- A. 1. *Tenus* is put after its Case, and when the Noun is Plural, it commonly requires the Genitive; as, *mento tenus*; *crurum tenus*.
2. *A* and *e* are put before Consonants, *ab* and *ex* before Vowels, *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, *a patre*, *e regione*, *ex urbe*, *abs quovis*, *abs te*.
3. The Preposition *in*, when it signifies *to*, *into*, *toward*, *against*, *till*, *until*, *over*, *after*, *for*, *upon*, *by*, or *between*, governs the Accusative; but when it signifies *in* or *among*, it generally takes the Ablative; as, *in patriam*: *Siletur in noctem*: *Regum in proprios greges timendorum, imperium*: *Nisi in bonis amicitia esse non potest*.
4. *Sub*, signifying *at* or *about* such a Time, generally governs the Accusative; as, *sub noctem*.
5. *Super*, signifying *beyond*, *above*, *besides*, *upon*, *at*, or *in the Time of*, governs the Accusative; as, *super Indos profert imperium*; *Punicum exercitum, super morbum, etiam fames affecit*; *Super vinum et epulas*; that is, *inter cenandum, inter pocula*.
6. The Word governed by the Preposition is sometimes suppressed; as, *Ad Diane*, viz. *adem*.
7. To the Prepositions governing the Accusative, are also added, *circiter*, *prope*, *usque*, and *versus*; as, *circiter meridiem exercitum reduxit*; *Prope muros castra habent*.—These are rather numbred among the Adverbs, and in the Examples, the Accusative is governed by *ad* understood.—*Procul*, in the same

Q. What is the Rule about a Preposition in Composition ?

75. *A.* A Preposition in Composition often governs the same Case as it does without it ; as, *Adeamus scholam*, let us go to the School ; *Exeamus schola*, let us go out of the School.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Q. Do Interjections govern any Case ?

76. *A.* The Interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative ; as, *O formose puer !* O fair Boy ! *Ah me miserum !* Ah wretch that I am !

Q. What other Interjections govern Cases ?

77. *A.* *Hei* and *væ* govern the Dative ; as, *Hei mihi !* Ah me. *Væ vobis.* Wo to you.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Q. What is the Rule about Conjunctions ?

78. *A.* The Conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods ; as, *Honora patrem & matrem*, honour your Father and Mother ; *Nec scribit nec legit*, he neither reads nor writes.

Q. Are

same Way may be said to govern the Ablative ; as, *haud procul seditione res erat.*—But here also, and in all such Cases, the Ablative is governed by supplying the Preposition *a*, or *ab*.

8. Among the Poets, the Prepositions are often omitted ; as, *devenere locos latos*, viz. *ad : Maria aspera, juro*, viz. *per*, &c.

NUMB. 75. *Q.* What is to be observed on this Rule ?

A. 1. This Rule only takes Place when the Preposition may be separated from the Verb, and put before the Case by itself ; as, *alloquor patrem* ; that is, *loquor ad patrem : Circumvehitur arcem, Vehitur circum arcem.*

2. The Preposition is frequently repeated ; as, *ad nos adeunt ; Exire e finibus suis.*

NUMB. 76. *Q.* What is to be observed upon this Rule ?

A. *O* before the Vocative is often suppressed ; as, *Musa mihi causas memora.*

NUMB. 77. *Q.* What is to be observed on this Rule ?

A. 1. *Heus* and *Ohe* govern the Vocative only ; as, *Heus Syre. Ohe libelle.*

2. *Ab* and *vah* take the Accusative or Vocative ; as, *Ab me miserum ! Ab virgo infelix ! Vah inconstantiam ! Vah salus mea !*

3. *Hem* takes the Dative, Accusative or Vocative ; as, *Hem tibi ! Hem astutias ! Hem mea lux !*

NUMB. 78. *Q.* What is to be observed about Conjunctions ?

A. 1. To the Conjunctions above-named add, *quam*, *nisi*, *preterquam*, *an* ; also *nampe*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *nedum*, *sed*, *verum* ; And Adverbs of Likeness ; as, *ceu*, *tantum*, *quasi*, *ut*, *velut*.

2. If

142 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Are not many Adverbs and Conjunctions joined to the Subjunctive Mood.

79. *A.* Yes ; *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, dummodo, &c.* are commonly joined to the Subjunctive Mood ; as, *lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Utinam scaperes*, I wish you were wise.

2. If the Words in a Sentence admit of different Constructions, the Cases or Moods, notwithstanding the Conjunction, may be different ; as, *mea et rei-publicæ interest ; Sexcentis et pluris emptæ ; Tecum habita, et noris quam sit tibi curta supellex.*

NUMB. 79. *Q.* What is to be further observed upon this Rule ?

A. 1. The following Words, when used interrogatively, stand first in a Sentence, and take the Indicative Mood ; whether they be Nouns ; as, *quantus, quotus, uter* ; or Pronouns ; as, *quis, cujus* ; or Adverbs ; as, *ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quando, quamdiu, quoties, cur, quare, quomobrem, quomodo, qui* ; or Conjunctions ; as, *ne, an, an, annon.*——But when a Word goes before them in a Sentence, as, *scio, nescio, video, intelligo, rogo, peto, cedo, dico, dubito* ; or *incertus, dubius, ignarus*, and the like ; they generally become Indefinite, and take the Subjunctive ; as, *Quæ virtus, et quanta, boni, sit vivere parvo, Discite ; Ut sciam quid agas.*

2. *Ne* takes the Imperative or Subjunctive ; as, *ne time, or timeas.*——After *cave*, *ne* is rather understood ; as, *cave facias.*

3. *Ut* is elegantly suppressed after these Verbs, *volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like.——Also after these Imperatives, *sine, fac, or facito* ; as, *ducas, volo, hodie uxorem ; Fac te patrem esse sentiat, &c.*

4. The Adverb *cum* is joined to the Indicative or Subjunctive ; but ofner to the Subjunctive ; as, *Nunc cum non queo, fero ; Carmina tum melius, cum venerit ipse, canemus.*

5. *Dum* is joined to the Indicative Mood, when we speak of a Thing present and not finished ; as, *dum hæc aguntur ; Priami dum regna manebant*——*Dum*, and *donec* for *usquedum*, until, sometimes take the Indicative, and sometimes the Subjunctive ; as, *opperior dum ista cognosco ; Hoc differt, donec effervescat ira.*

6. *Postquam* or *posteaquam* is commonly joined to the Indicative Mood ; as, *postquam excessit de epulis.*

7. *Antequam, priusquam, simul, simulac, simulatque, ubi* for *postquam*, are sometimes joined to the Indicative, sometimes to the Subjunctive Mood ; as, *antequam de incommadis Sicilia dico ; Antequam de republica dicam, &c.*

8. *Quasi, ceu, tanquam, perinde*, denoting Similitude or Likeness, are joined to the Indicative ; as, *fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex.* But when they signify Irony, or any Thing counterfeited, they are joined to the Subjunctive ; as, *quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur.*

9. *Ut* for *utinam*, is joined to the Subjunctive ; as, *ut illum dii, deaque perdant ; Ut* for *postquam*, to the Indicative ; as, *ut in Ponto sumus ; Quin* for *cur non*, requires the Indicative ; as, *quin continetis vocem ?* for *ut non*, *quominus*, the Subjunctive ; as, *nihil est tam facile quin sit difficilis, &c.*

Of PROSODY.

Q. WHAT is Profody?

A. Profody is that Part of Grammar which teacheth the *Quantity* and *Accent* of *Syllables*, with the *Art* of *making Verses*.

Q. What is Quantity?

A. It is that which determines the Difference of Time in pronouncing different Syllables.

Q. How are Syllables divided with regard to Quantity?

A. They are either short, long, or doubtful.

Q. What is a short Syllable?

A. A Syllable which is pronounced quickly, and consists of one Time; as, *per*, *in*.—It is marked in this Manner $\acute{}$; as, *pīus*.

Q. What is a long Syllable?

A. A long Syllable consists of two Times; that is, requires double the Time to pronounce it that a short one does; as, *mons*, *ros*.—It is marked after this Fashion $-$; as, *fēlix*.

Q. What is a doubtful or common Syllable?

A. A Syllable which is sometimes long and sometimes short in Verse; as the first Syllable in *patres*, and the Middle in *tenebrae*, *volucris*.

Q. How are Syllables divided with regard to their Position?

A. If the Word be of more Syllables than two, into the first, Middle and Last.

Q. What is the name of the third Syllable from the end, in such Words?

A. The Antepenult.

Q. What is the Name of the last but one?

A. The Penult.

Q. What is the Division of Syllables, when the Word consists of two Syllables?

A. They are called the First and Last.

Q. How is the Quantity of Vowels to be known?

A. By Authority and by Rules.

Q. What do you reckon sufficient Authority to fix the Quantity of a Word?

A. The like Example in any remarkable Author?

Q. How are the Rules of Quantity divided?

A. Into *General* and *Special* Rules.

Of

144 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.
Of the GENERAL RULES.

Of one Vowel before another among the *Latins*.

Q. What is the Quantity of one Vowel before another?

A. One Vowel before another is short in *Latin Words*; as, *Deus creavit omnia*.——Also *mihi, nihil*, because *h* is not reckoned a Letter, but an Aspiration.

Q. What are the Exceptions?

A. 1. The Verb *fio* has the first Vowel long; as, *fiam, fiebam*.——But you must except the Tenses where it takes *r* after two Vowels, for then it is short; as, *feri, fierem*.

2. When *e* comes between two *i*'s, in the fifth Declension, it is long; as, *diei, speciei*.

3. When the Genitive ends in *ius*, *i* is long in Prose, and common in Verse; as, *unius, illius*.——But *alius* and *alterius*, have *i* always short.

4. *Ohe, io*, and *Diana*, have the first Syllable, sometimes long, sometimes short.

5. *Pompei, Cai*, and the like Vocatives are long.

6. *Aer, dius*, and *cheu*, have the first Syllable long; also *a* in *aulai, terrai*, and such old Genitives of the first Declension.

Of *Greek Words* having one Vowel before another.

Q. What is the Rule concerning *Greek Words* having one Vowel before another?

A. A Vowel before a Vowel, among the *Greeks*, is sometimes short; as in *Danæ, Idæa*; and sometimes long; as in *Lycæon, Cytheræa*.

Of a Vowel which is long by *Position*.

Q. When is a Syllable long by *Position*?

A. A Syllable is long by *Position*, when a Vowel is placed before two Consonants in the same Word; as, *arma*.——Or when one Word ends with a Consonant, and the next begins with a Consonant; as, *Errabat silva in magna*.——Or when it is put before a double Consonant; as, *axis, gaza, major*.——Except from this Part of the Rule the Compounds of *jugum*, which have *i* short before a double Consonant; as, *bijugus, quadrijugus*.

Q. When a short Vowel comes before a mute Consonant, or any of the Liquids *l, m, n, r*, is it long by *Position*?

A. No; it is always common among the Poets; that is, either long or short; as *a* in *agris*, *e* in *pharetra*, *u* in *volucris*.

Q. What

Q. What is required before this Rule can take Place?

A. Three Things: 1. The Mute must go before the Liquid; otherwise it is not comprehended in the Rule; as in *arte*, *albus*, where *a* is long by Position.—2. The Mute must not only be first, but be also in the same Syllable with the Liquid, or the Example does not fall under the Rule; as in *ab-luo*, *ob-ruo*, *quàm-ob-rem*, where the Vowels are all long by Position, because the Mute and Liquid are of different Syllables.—3. The Vowel preceeding this Mute and the Liquid, must be naturally short; if it be long, it continues long; as *a* in *acris*, *matris*, is long.—
NOTE, That *m* and *n*, the two other Liquids, are only to be found in Greek Words; as, *Tecmessa*, *cycnus*.

Q. What is the Rule about a Vowel or Syllable when it is contracted?

A. Such a Vowel or Syllable is said to be naturally long; as, *cogo* from *coago*, *alius* from *aliius*, *tibicen* from *tibiicen*, *it* from *iit*.—Also when two Words are contracted into one; as, *sis* for *si vis*; *sodes* for *si audes*; *malo* for *magis volo*; *nolo* for *non volo*.

Q. What is the Quantity of Diphthongs?

A. A Diphthong is always long among the Greeks; as, *Æneas*, *Eubæa*.—It is also long for the most Part among the Latins; as, *aurum*.—Except *æ* in the Latin Preposition *præ*, followed by a Vowel; as, *præit*, *præustus*, where the Diphthong is short.

Of the SPECIAL RULES.

Q. In what Manner do you propose to consider the Special Rules?

A. We shall consider them first with regard to the particular Syllables with which they are concerned.

Q. What are the Syllables with which they are concerned?

A. The first, middle, and last Syllables.

Q. What of the Profody will afterwards remain to be considered?

A. Nothing, except the Crements of Nouns and Verbs, and the Rules for making Verses.

Special Rules concerning the FIRST SYLLABLES.

OF DERIVATIVE Words.

Q. What is the Quantity of the first Syllable of Derivative Words?

A. Derivative Words are of the same Quantity with the Primitives; as the first Syllable in *amicus*, *pavidus*, is short, because

146 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

cause it is short in *amo*, *paveo*. But it is long in *maternus*, *nativus*, *finitimus*, because the same Syllable is long in *mater*, *natus*, *finis*.

Q. What Words are excepted from this Rule?

A. 1. The following Words, which are long, tho' the first Syllable of the Primitive be short; *vox*, *vocis*, of *voco*; *regula*, *regina*, of *rego*; *sedes* of *sedeo*; *lex*, *legis*, of *lego*; *jumentum*, of *juvo*; *mobilis* of *moveo*; *humanus* of *homo*.——

2. These Words, which are short, tho' the first Syllable of the Primitive be long; *arena* and *arista* from *areo*; *posui* of *pono*; *potui* of *possum*; *dicax* of *dico*; *genu* of *gigno*.

Of the first Syllables in PERFECTS and SUPINES.

OF PRETERITES.

Q. When the Perfect of a Verb has but two Syllables, what is the Quantity of the first?

A. It is long, as *vidi*, *movi*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions?

A. Yes; these six Perfects, *bibi*, *scidi*, *fidi*, *tuli*, *dedi*, *steti*, have the first Syllable short.

Q. What is the Quantity of Preterites when they have more than two Syllables?

A. They take the same Quantity in the first Syllable, as in the first Syllable of the Present; as, *vocavi* is short, because *voco* is short; and *clamavi* is long, because *clamo* is long.

Q. What are excepted?

A. The following Preterites, which have the first Syllable short, tho' it was long in the Present; *posui* from *pono*, *genui* from *gigno*, *potui* from *possum*.

Q. When Preterites double the first Syllable, what is the Quantity of it?

A. Both the first Syllable and the second are short; as, *cecidi*, *pepuli*, *tetigi*, *peperi*, *didici*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions?

A. *Cacidi* from *cædo*, *pepedi* from *pedo*, which have the second long; also *sefelli*, *momordi*, *tetendi*, and all in which there are two Consonants after the Vowel.

Of the first Syllable in SUPINES.

Q. When a Supine has but two Syllables, what is the Quantity of the first?

A. It is long; as, *visum*, *motum*.

Q. What

Q. What Words are excepted ?

A. The following Supines, which have the first Syllable short ;
ſatum from *ſero*, *citum* from *cio*, *litum* from *lino*, *ſitum* from
ſino, *ſtatum* from *ſiſto*, *itum* from *eo*, *datum* from *do*, *rutum*
from *ruo*, *quitum* from *queo*, *ratum* from *reor*.

Of the first Syllable in Words compounded with a Preposition.

Q. What is the Quantity of a Preposition in Composition ?

A. Prepositions in Composition are sometimes short, some-
times long, by the very ſame Rules which determine their Quan-
tity when they are not compounded ; as, *a* in *amitto*, *e* in *dedu-
co*, are long, becauſe, by the Rules to be given about the laſt
Syllables, the Prepositions *a* and *de* are long, when uſed ſepa-
rately ; on the contrary, *ab* in *aboleo*, *per* in *perimo*, are ſhort,
becauſe, by the ſame Rules, *ab* and *per* are ſhort, when they are
not compounded.

Q. Is there not a particular Rule about the Preposition *pro* in
Composition ?

A. Yes.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Greek Preposition *pro*, which
is of the ſame Signification as the Latin *ante* ?

A. It is always ſhort ; as, *propheta*, *prologus*.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Latin Preposition *pro* ?

A. It is long ; as, *prodo*, *promitto*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions from the Latin *pro* ?

A. The following Words are excepted, where *pro* is ſhort ;
procella, *profanus*, *profari*, *proſecto*, *profeſſus*, *profiteor*, *pro-
fugio*, *pronepos*, *profundus*, *protervus*.

Q. Is not *pro* common in ſome Words ?

A. Yes ; in *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulſo*, *procuro*,
Proſerpina, and in the Verb *propago*.

Q. Is there any Rule about the Inſeparable Prepositions ?

A. The Prepositions *ſe* and *di* are long in Composition ; as,
ſeparo, *ſemoveo*, *diduco*, *divello*.—But you muſt except *dirimo*
and *diſertus*, where *di* is ſhort.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Inſeparable Preposition *re* ?

Q. *Re*, in Composition is ſhort ; as, *remitto*, *repello*.—But
re in *refert*, the Impersonal Verb, is long.

148 *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

The Quantity of the MIDDLE SYLLABLE.

OF COMPOUND Words.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Middle Syllables of Compound Words ?

A. Compound Words are of the same Quantity with the Simple of which they are compounded ; as, *e* in *perlego* is short, because *e* in *lego* is short ; and, in the Perfect, *e* in *perlegi* is long, because *e* in *legi* is long. On the contrary, *o* in *improbus* is short, because *o* in the Simple *probus* is short.—NOTE, That the Quantity of the Compound is the same with that of the Simple, tho' the Vowel or Diphthong happen to be changed in the Composition ; as, *concido* from *cado* is long, and *incido* from *cado* is short. In the same Manner *irritus* from *ratus* is short, and *iniquus* from *æquus* is long.

Q. Are there any Exceptions from these general Rules ?

A. The following Words are excepted, which have the Middle short, tho' their Simple be long ; as, *veridicus*, and the like Compounds in *dicus*, from *dico* ; *semisopitus* from *sopitus* ; *cognitus* and *agnitus* from *notus*, *innubus* and *pronubus* from *nubo* — Also *imbacillus*, where the second Syllable is long, tho' *ba* in *baculus*, from which it is derived, be short.

Of the Middle Syllables of compound Words where there is no Preposition.

Q. What is the Rule concerning such Words ?

A. If the Middle Part of such Compound Words end in *i* or *o*, then both the Vowels *i* and *o* are short ; as, *omnipotens*, *agricola*, *bibliotheca*, *philosophus*.

Q. Are there any Exceptions from this Rule ?

A. Yes ; both of Words that end in *i* and *o* in the Middle ;

Q. What are the Exceptions in *i* ?

A. The following, which have *i* long in the first compounding Part of the Word :

1. All Nouns, which, tho' *i* be in some of the Cases, are obliged to change it into another Letter, in the Course of the Declension ; as, *quidam*, *quivis*, *quilibet*, *quicunque*, *quantivis*, *quanticunque*, *tantidem*, *unicuique*, *idem*, *reipublicæ*, *qualicunque*.

2. Compound Words which can be pronounced separately, without hurting the Sense ; as, *ludimagister*, which may also be changed into *magister ludi*.

3. Those which admit of the Figure *Crasis* or *Syncope* ; as, *tibicen*

tibicen for *tibiicen*; *bigæ*, *trigæ*, *quadrigæ*, for *bijugæ*, *trijugæ*, *quadrijugæ*; *ilicet*, *scilicet*, for *ire licet*, *scire licet*.

4. Allo make long *idem* in the Masculine Gender, (for it is short if it be Neuter;) and *ubique*, *ibidem*.——But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, and the simple *ubi*, the Quantity of *i* is common or doubtful.

5. The Compounds from *dies* are also long; as, *biduum*, *triduum*, *meridies*, *pridie*, *postridie*.——But *quotidie* and *quotidianus*, have the second Syllable sometimes short.

Q. What Words are excepted from the general Rule, when the first compounding Part of a Word ends in *o*?

A. The following, which are long; Words compounded with *intro*, *retro*, *contro*, and *quando*; as, *introduco*, *intromitto*, *retrocedo*, *controversia*, *controversus*, *quandoque*, &c. To which add, *alioqui* or *alioquin*, *cateroquin*, *utroque*.——But *quandoquidem* hath the second Syllable short.

Q. What if the middle Part of a compounded Word ends in *a*?

A. If it ends in *a*, it is long; as, *quare*, *quapropter*, *quatenus*; also, *trado*, *traduco*.——But except *eadem* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural of *idem*, where *a* is short.

Q. What if the middle compounding Part ended in *e*?

A. Then the Vowel *e* in the Middle is short; Examples in the first Syllable are, *nefas*, *nefastus*, *nefandus*, *nefarius*, *neque*, *nequeo*; also *tredecim*, *trecenti*, *equidem*. Examples in the second Syllable are, *valedico*, *malesacio*, *tepesacio*, *patesacio*. Examples of the third Syllable are, *hujuscemodi*, *ejuscemodi*.

Q. What if the first compounding Part ends in *u* or *y*?

A. Then *u* or *y* are short; as *ducenti* in the first Syllable; *quadrupes*, *centuplum*, *Trojugena*, in the second.

Of the Middle Syllable of SUPINES which have more Syllables than two.

Q. What is the Quantity of such Syllables?

A. 1. Supines which have more Syllables than two, if they end in *atum*, *etum*, and *utum*, have the Penult long; as, *amatum*, *deletum*, *minutum*.

2. Supines in *itum*, if they come from Preterites in *ivi*, have the Penult long; as, *cupitum* from *cupivi*.——But Supines in *itum*, from any other Perfect, have *i* in *itum* short; as, *cubui*, *cubitum*.

Q. What have you to observe of the middle Syllables of Participles?

A. 1. Participles have the Preterite long, when regularly formed from *vi* in the Perfect; as, *amavi*, *amatus*; *audivi*, *auditus*;

150 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

auditus ; otherwise they are short ; as, *crepui*, *crepitus* ; *habui*, *habitus*.

2. The Penult of the Participle in *rus* is always long ; as, *amaturus*.

Of the Middle Syllables of different Sorts of NOUNS, whether *Substantives* or *Adjectives*.

Q. What Rules determine the Quantity of such Words ?

A. The following :

1. Patronymicks of the Masculine Gender in *ides* or *ades*, have generally the Penult short ; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*.—Except such as come from Nouns ending in *eus* ; as, *Belides*, and the like, which are long.

Q. What is the second Rule ?

A. 2. Patronymicks in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ois*, *otis*, *ine*, and *one*, have the Penult long ; as, *Ptolemais*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Minois*, *Nilotis*, *Nerine*, *Acrisione*.

3. Adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, *imus*, have commonly the Penult short ; as, *Spartacus*, *modicus*, *nitidus*, *finitimus* : Also Superlatives ; as, *pulcherrimus*, *maximus*, &c. But you must except the following Words of this Kind, which are long ; *opacus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, and *pudicus*, *infidus*, *opimus*, and these two Superlatives, *imus* and *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *alis*, and almost all that end in *anus*, *arus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *ofus*, have the Penult long ; as, *conjugalis*, *urbanus*, *amarus*, *æstivus*, *canorus*, *arenosus*.—But *barbarus* is short.

5. Verbal Adjectives in *ilis* shorten the Penult ; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But if they are derived from Nouns they are long in the Penult ; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, to which add *exilis*, *subtilis* ; also Names of Months ; as, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, &c.——But Nouns in *atilis*, whether they be derived from Nouns or Verbs, have the Penult short ; as, *plicatilis*, *versatilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *inus*, derived from Things that have Life, and signify Possession ; also Distributive Numerals, proper Nouns, and such as signify one's Nation, have the Penult long ; as, *agninus*, *caninus* ; *binus*, *trinus*, *quinus* ; *Albinus*, *Cratinus* ; *Alexandrinus*, *Latinus*.

7. Adjectives in *inus*, derived from Things without Life, such as Plants, Trees, Stones, or any other Kind of Matter ; and these derived from Adverbs of Time, and from Substantives denoting the Seasons of the Year, do all shorten the Penult ; as, *crocinus*, *hyacinthinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *adamantinus*, *crystallinus*, *crastinus*, *diutinus*, *pristinus*, &c.

8. Diminutives

8. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, and *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, shorten the Penult; as, *urceolus*, *filiola*, *musæolum*; *lectulus*, *ratiuncula*, *corculum*.

9. Adverbs in *tim* have the Penult long; as, *oppidatim*, *tributum*, *viritim*.—Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*, which are short.

10. Latin Denominatives in *aceus*, *aneus*, *arius*, *aticus*, *orius*; also Verbals in *abilis* and *atilis*, lengthen the Antepenult; as, *cretaceus*, *momentaneus*, *cibarius*, *aquaticus*, *censorius*, *amabilis*, *pluviatilis*.

11. Adjectives in *icius*, derived from Nouns, have *i* in the Antepenult short; as, *gentilicius*, *patricius*, *tribunicius*; but if they be derived from Supines or Participles, the Vowel *i* in the Antepenult is long; as, *advectitius*, *commendaticius*, *suppositicius*.

Of the LAST SYLLABLE.

Of A in the last Syllable.

Q. What is the Quantity of *a* in the last Syllable?

A. The Vowel *a* is short in such Words as are declined by Cases; as, *musā*, *templā*, *lampadā*.—But *a* final, or *a* in the end, is long, in Words which are not declined by Cases, whether Verbs or indeclinable Particles; as, *ama*, *frustra*, *præterea*.

Q. Are there not Exceptions from both Parts of this Rule?

A. Yes.

Q. What are the Exceptions from Words that are declined by Cases?

A. 1. The final *a* is always long in the Ablative of the first Declension; as, *musā*, *Æneā*.—2. The Vocatives of Greek Nouns in *as*, have *a* long; as, *ὦ Ænea*, *ὦ Palla*.

Q. What are the Exceptions from Words that are not declined by Cases?

A. 1. These Particles, *ita*, *quia*, *eja*, and *puta*, used adverbially, have the final *a* short.——2. *Contra*, *ultra*, are short; and sometimes Numerals in *ginta*, tho' it is best to make them long.

Of E in the last Syllable.

Q. What is the Quantity of final *e*?

A. The Vowel *e* is short in the end of a Word; as, *nate*, *cubile*, *patre*.

Q. What

152 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What are the Exceptions where *e* final is long ?

A. 1. All Nouns of the first and fifth Declension; as, *Caliope*, *Anchise*; also *re* and *die*, with their Compounds *quare*, *hodie*, *pridie*, *postridie*, *quotidie*.

2. Greek Words in *e* which want the Singular; as, *cete*, *mele*, *Tempe*.—Also the second Person Singular of the Imperative of the second Conjugation; as, *doce*, *mane*; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes found to be short.

3. Monosyllables are also long; as, *me*, *te*, *se*: Except these inseparable Conjunctions, *que*, *ne*, *ve*; and these syllabical Additions, *pte*, *ce*, *te*, which are short; as, *suapte*, *hujusce*, *tute*.

4. Adverbs derived from Nouns of the second Declension; as, *placide*, *pulchre*, *valde*; also all Adverbs of the Superlative Degree; as, *doctissime*, *fortissime*; but *bene*, *male*, *superne*, *inferne*, have the final *e* short.

5. *Ferre*, *fere*, and *ohe*, are also long.

Of I in the last Syllable.

Q. What is the Quantity of final *i* ?

A. The Vowel *i* is long in the End of a Word; as, *domini*, *patri*, *fructui*, *amavi*, *doceri*, *heri*.

Q. What are the Exceptions ?

A. The following: 1. Greek Vocatives are short; as, *Alexi*, *Amarylli*.

2. Greek Datives of the third Declension, from Words that grow in the Genitive, have *i* sometimes long and sometimes short; as, *Minoidi*, *Palladi*, short; *Thetidi*, *Paridi*, *Tyndaridi*, long.

3. *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *cui*, *nisi*, *ubi*, and *quasi*, are common, but much oftner short.—NOTE, *Sicubi*, *necubi*, and *sicuti*, are always short.

Of O in the last Syllable.

Q. What is the Quantity of the final *o* ?

A. The Vowel *o* is common at the End of a Word; as, *virgo*, *amo*, *disco*, *quando*,

Q. What are the Exceptions ?

A. The following: 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *O*, *do*, *fio*, *pro*.—Also Greek Words of the Feminine Gender, ending in *o*; as, *Dido*, *Sappho*; to which add, the Dative and Ablative of the second Declension; as, *Domino*, *Deo*; and Greek Genitives in *o*, derived from Attic Nouns in *ων*, which are also long; as, *Androgeo*.

2. So

Of the Quantity of Syllables. 153

2. Adverbs in *o*, derived from Nouns, are also long; as, *certo*, *crebro*, *merito*, *falso*, *paulo*; also, *quo*, *eo*, and their Compounds, *quovis*, *quocunque*, *adeo*, *ideo*; to which add, *illo*, *idcirco*, *citro*, *intro*, *retro*, *ultra*; but observe that the Adverbs *denuo*, *sero*, *mutuo*, *postremo*, *vero*, tho' they be often long, are sometimes made short by the Poets.——*Modo*, with its Compounds *quomodo*, *dummodo*, *postmodo*, are short.——Among those that are short, we also reckon *ambo*, *duo*, *scio*, *nescio*, *illico*, *imo*, *cedo* for *dic* or *da*, *ego*, *homo*, and *cito*.

3. In Virgil, the Gerund in *do* is always long; other Poets make it short; as, *faciendo*, *vigilando*. *Ergo* for *causa* is long; when it signifies *igitur*, it is doubtful.

Of U and Y in the last Syllable.

Q. What is the Quantity of these two Vowels?

A. The Vowel *u* is always long; as, *vultu*, *dictu*, *diu*; and *y* is always short; as, *Moly*, *Tiphy*.

OF CONSONANTS in the Last Syllable.

Of final B, C, D, L, M.

Q. What is the Quantity of *b*?

A. *B*, at the End of Latin Words, is short; as, *ab*, *ob*, *sub*; in foreign Words, it is long; as, *Jacob*, *Job*.

Q. What is the Quantity of final *c*?

A. *C*, at the End of a Word, is long; as, *ac*, *sic*, *illuc*.——Except *nec* and *donec*, which are short.——So is the Pronoun *hic*, and the Verb *fac*.

Q. What is the Quantity of *d* in the End?

A. *D* final is short in Latin Words; as, *ad*, *apud*, *quid*, *illud*, *sed*; and doubtful in foreign Words; as, *Benadad*, *Bogud*.

Q. What is the Quantity of final *l*?

A. *L* is short at the End of a Word; as, *tribunal*, *consul*, *procul*.

Q. What are excepted?

A. *Sol*, *sal*, *nil*, and Hebrew Words, are long; as, *Nabal*, *Daniel*.

Q. What is the Quantity of *m*?

A. *M* was reckoned short at the End of Words by the ancient Romans; as, *Insignita ferè tum milia militum octo*. *Ennius*. But now it is generally thrown away in the scanning of Verses.

154 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of final N.

Q. What is the Quantity of *n* ?

A. *N* at the End of a Word is long; as, *quin, sin, non, Titan, Lacedæmon, Ænean.*

Q. What are excepted ?

A. Nouns ending in *n*, having *inis* in the Genitive, have *n* short in the Nominative; as, *carmen, crimen*—Also Nouns in *on* of the second Declension; as, *Ilion, Pylon*.—And the Accusatives of Greek Nouns that were short in the Nominative; as, *Æginan, Alexin, Ghelyn, Ityn*.—And the Datives of Greek Words in the Plural Number which end in *sin*; as, *Arcafin, Troasfin.*

Of final R.

Q. What is the Quantity of final *r* ?

A. *R* final is short; as, *calcar, Hamilcar, precor, semper, præter.*

Q. What are excepted ?

A. 1. These Monosyllables which are long; *far, lar, nar, cur, fur,* and *par*, with its Compounds *compar, dispar, impar.*

2. Greek Nouns, or any other Words, which have the Genitive in *e* long; as, *crater, stater, ver, Recimer, eris*.—*Iber, -eri* or *Iberis*, has *r* in the Nominative also long, and *aër, æther*.—But *Celtiber* is doubtful.

Of final AS.

Q. What is the Quantity of *as* ?

A. *As* in the End of a Word is long; as, *mas, Thomas, pietas, amas, legas.*

Q. What are excepted ?

A. Greek Nouns, having the Genitive in *adis*, have *as* short in the Nominative; as, *Arcas, lampas, Ilias, -adis*. To which add *anas, anatis*; and the Accusative Plural in *as* of Greek Nouns in the third Declension; as, *crateras, Cyclopas, heroas, Troas.*

Of final ES.

Q. What is the Quantity of *es* ?

A. *Es* at the End of a Word is long; as, *Alcides, quies, ames, doces, octies.*

Q. What

Q. What are excepted?

A. The following Words, which are short: 1. The Nominative and Vocative Plural of Greek Nouns, which grow, or have a Syllable more in the Genitive Singular than in the Nominative; as, *Amazones, Arcades, Delphines, Naides, gryphes.*

2. *Es* from the Verb *sum* is also short, with its Compounds *abes, ades, pates*, and the Preposition *penes*.—Also Greek Nouns in *es*; as, *cacoëthes, hippomanes.*

3. Latin Nouns in *es*, which have the Penult of the growing Genitive in *itis* short, shorten *es* final in the Nominative; as, *ales, hebes, obfes*.—But the following Nouns of that Kind have *es* long; as, *Ceres, paries, aries, abies*, and *pes*, with its Compounds *bipes, tripes, alipes, sonipes.*

Of final IS.

Q. What is the Quantity of *is*?

A. *Is* at the End of a Word is short; as, *militis, adspicis, magis, cis.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. All the oblique Cases in the Plural Number are long; as, *pennis, armis, vobis, omnis, urbis*, for *omnes, urbes*. Also *is* in the Nominative, when the Genitive ends in *inis, itis*, or *entis*; as, *Salamis, Samnis, Simois*.—The Adverbs *gratis* and *foris*, also *glis*, and *vis*, whether it be Noun or Verb, are long.

2. *Is* in the second Person Singular of Verbs, is long, when the second Person Plural ends in *itis* long; as, *audis, nescis, abis, possis.*

3. *Ris* in the Future of the Subjunctive is sometimes short; as,

*Dixeris egregiè, notum si callida verbum
Reddiderit junctura novum.*————

Sometimes it is long; as,

Da mihi te placidum, dederis in carmina vires.

Of final OS.

Q. What is the Quantity of *os*?

A. *Os* at the End of a Word is long; as, *flos, nepos, honos, custos.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. Greek Genitives in *os* are short; as, *Arcados, Tethyos, Tereos*.—Also *compos, impos*, and *os offis*, with its Compound *exos*.—Also Greek Nouns of the Neuter Gender ending in *os*; as, *chaos, melos, epos.*

2. Greek

156 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

2. Greek Nominatives and Vocatives in *os*, of the second Declension, are also short; as, *Claros, Tenedos*. But Greek Words in *os*, which, according to the Attic Dialect, have the Genitive in *o*, have *os* long in the Nominative; as, *Androgeos, Nicoleos*.

Of final US.

Q. What is the Quantity of *us*?

A. *Us* at the End of a Word is short; as, *annus, tempus, legimus, intus, varius*.

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grus, sus, thus, mus*.—Also Genitives in *us* of the third Declension; as, *Clîus, Sapphûs, Mantûs*.—Also the Genitive Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of the fourth Declension; as, *fructus, manus*.

2. Nouns in *us*, which have the Genitive in *uris, utis, udis*, with the Penult long, are short; as, *tellus, virtus, incus*. And Words in *us*, with the Genitive in *untis* and *odis*; as, *Amathus* and *tripus*.—And Words in *us* which have *u* in the Vocative; as, *Panthus, ô Panthu*, and the blessed Name of JESUS, ô JESU.

Of YS in the End.

Q. What is the Quantity of *ys*?

A. *Ys* at the End of a Word is short; as, *Capys, chelys, chlamys*.

Q. What are excepted?

A. *Tethys* sometimes has *ys* long; and Nouns in *ys*, which also take *yu* in the Nominative; as, *Cortys, Phorcys, Trachys*.

Of final T.

Q. What is the Quantity of *t*?

A. The Consonant *t* is always short at the End; as, *caput, amat, ut, et*.—But it is sometimes made long by the Figure Syncope, as,

Dum trepidant, it hasta Tago per tempus utrumque.

Of the last Syllable in a Verse.

Q. What is the Quantity of the last Syllable?

A. The last Syllable in a Verse is always common; that is, short or long at Pleasure; as, *Gens inimica mihi Tyrrenum navigat aquor*; where it is long; And, *Crescit occulto velut arbor ævo*; where it is short.

OF

Of the CREMENTS of NOUNS.

Q. WHAT is the Crement of a Noun ?

A. The Crement of a Noun is where the oblique Cases exceed the Nominative in one or more Syllables.

Q. Is there any Crement when the Genitive has no more Syllables than the Nominative ?

A. No ; as, *musæ, musæ ; vates, vatis.*

Q. What is the Crement of the Genitive, when it is longer than the Nominative by one Syllable ?

A. The Penult ; as, *rex, regis ; sermo, sermonis ; interpres, interpretis.*

Q. How do you determine the Crement of the rest of the Cases ?

A. The Crement of the rest of the Cases is always determined by that of the Genitive ; as, *sermo, sermonis, sermoni, sermonem, sermone, sermonum, sermonibus ;* in which *o* is always long, because it is long in the Genitive.

Q. Are there not some Words which have two Creements ?

A. Yes ; *iter, supellex*, and the Compounds of *caput* ending in *ps*, have a double Crement in the Singular ; as, *itineris, supellestilis, anceps, ancipitis* ; and the Dative and Ablative of the third Declension in *ibus*, have for the most Part two Creements ; as, *regibus, hominibus.*—But observe, that *iter, supellex*, and *anceps*, in these Cases, have three Creements ; as, *itineribus, supellestilibus, ancipitibus.*

Of the CREMENTS of the first, fourth, and fifth Declensions.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Creements of these Declensions ?

A. In the first, fourth, and fifth Declensions, there is no Crement in the Singular, unless when one Vowel goes before another, which is short, according to one of the preceeding Rules ; as, *aulai, anuis, speciei.*

Of the CREMENT of the second Declension.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement in this Declension ?

A. The Crement of the second Declension is short ; as, *tener, teneri.*

Q. What Words are excepted ?

A. Only *Iber, Iberi*, with its Compound *Celtiber*, which have the Penult long.

Of

158 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of the CREMENTS of the third Declension.

Of Nouns in A and I.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *a* in the third Declension?

A. Nouns ending in *a* have *atis* short; as, *dogma, dogmatis.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *i*?

A. Nouns in *i* have *itis* short in the Genitive; as, *hydromeli, hydromelitis.*

Of the CREMENT of Nouns in O.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *o*?

A. Nouns in *o* make short *inis* in the Genitive; as, *virgo, virginis.*—But when the Genitive ends in *enis* or *onis*, the Penult is long; as, *Anio, Anienis; Cicero, Ciceronis.*—Gentile Nouns are sometimes short in the Genitive; as, *Macedo, Macedonis; Saxonis, Lingonis, Teutonis;* and sometimes long; as, *Suessonis, Vettonis, Eburonis.*

Of the CREMENTS of Nouns in C, D, L, N.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *c*?

A. The Nouns in *c* of the third Declension have *c* long in the Genitive; as, *halec, halecis; Melchisedec, Melchisedecis.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *d*?

A. Nouns in *d* have the Crement short in the Genitive; as, *David, Davidis.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Cements of Nouns in *l*?

A. Nouns in *al*, of the Masculine Gender, have *alis* short; as, *Hannibal, Hannibalis.*—But Nouns in *al*, of the Neuter Gender, have *alis* long; as, *animal, animalis.*—N. B. The rest of the Nouns ending in *l* have the Crement short; as, *vigil, vigilis; consul, consulis.*—Except, however, Words having the Genitive in *elis*; as, *Daniel, Danielis;* and *sol, solis*, which have the Crement long.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *n*?

A. 1. Nouns in *on* are sometimes long; as, *Helicon, Heliconis;* and sometimes short; as, *Actæon, Actæonis.*

2. Nouns in *en* make *inis* short; as, *tibicen, tibicinis; flumen, fluminis.*

3. All the other Nouns in *n* have the Penult long: *Ananis;* as, *Titan, Titanis;* *en enis;* as, *Siren, Sirenis;* *in inis;* as, *Delphin, Delphinis;* *yn ynīs;* as, *Phorcyn, Phorcynis.*

Of

OF the CREMENT of Nouns in R.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *r*?

A. 1. Nouns in *ar*, of the Neuter Gender, have *aris* long; as, *calcar*, *calcaris*.—Except the following Nouns of the Neuter Gender in *ar*, which have *aris* short; *bacchar*, *baccharis*; *jubar*, *jubaris*; *nectar*, *nectaris*; also *par*, *paris*, with its Compounds *impar*, *imparis*; *dispar*, *disparis*.

2. The following Nouns have the Crement of the Genitive long; as, *Nar*, *Naris*; *fur*, *furis*; *ver*, *veris*; *Recimer*, *Recimeris*; *Byzer*, *Byzeris*; *ser*, *seris*; *Iber*, *Iberis*.

3. Greek Nouns in *ter* have *teris* long; as, *crater*, *crateris*; *character*, *characteris*.—Except *æther*, *ætheris*, which is short.

4. Nouns in *or* have *oris* long; as, *amor*, *amoris*; *timor*, *timoris*.—Except Neuters in *or*, which are short; as, *marmor*, *marmoris*; *æquor*, *æquoris*.—Greek Nouns in *or* are also short; as, *Hector*, *Hectoris*; *Rhetor*, *Rhetoris*.—*Arbor* also makes *arboris* short in the Genitive.

5. N. B. All the other Nouns ending in *r*, which have not been mentioned above, have the Penult short in the Genitive: *Ar aris*; as, *Cæsar*, *Cæsaris*; *Hamilcar*, *Hamilcaris*: *er e-ris*; as, *aër*, *aëris*; *mulier*, *mulieris*; *cadaver*, *cadaveris*; *iter*, *itineris*, and *verberis* from the obsolete Noun *verber*: *ur uris*; as, *vultur*, *vulturis*; *murmur*, *murmuris*: *yr yris*; as, *martyr*, *martyris*.

OF the CREMENTS of Nouns in AS, ES, IS, OS.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *as*?

A. Nouns in *as* have *atis* long in the Genitive; as, *pietas*, *pietatis*.

Q. What are excepted?

A. The following, which are short: Greek Nouns having *a-dis*, *atis*, and *anis* in the Genitive; as, *Pallas*, *Palladis*; *artocreas*, *artocreatis*; *Melas*, *Melanis*.—Also *anas*, *anatis*; *mas*, *maris*, and *vas*, *vadis*.—But *vas*, *vasis*, has the first Syllable long.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *es*?

A. Nouns in *es* have the Penult of the Genitive short; as, *viles*, *militis*; *seges*, *segetis*; *obses*, *obsidis*; *Ceres*, *Cereris*; *pes*, *pedis*.

Q. What are excepted?

A. The following, which have the Penult long; as, *locuples*, *locupletis*; *quies*, *quietis*; *mansues*, *mansuetis*; *hæres*, *hæredis*; *merces*, *mercedis*.—Also Greek Nouns which have *etis* in the Genitive; as, *lebes*, *lebetis*; *Thales*, *Thaletis*.

Q. What

169 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *is*?

A. Nouns in *is* have the Penult of the Genitive short; as, *lapis, lapidis; Phyllis, Phyllidis; cinis, cineris; sanguis, sanguinis.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. The following Words are long: *Glis, gliris.*—Latin Nouns which have *itis* in the Genitive; as, *lis, litis; dis, ditis; Quiris, Quiritis; Samnis, Samnitis.* But the Greek Word *Charis* has *Charitis* short.——*Psophis, Psophidis,* is also long, and *Grenis, Grenidis; Nesis, Nesidis.*—And, lastly, Greek Nouns which have both *is* and *in* for the Nominative; as, *Salamis* or *Salamin, Salaminis.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *os*;

A. Nouns in *os* have the Genitive long; as, *nepos, nepotis; flos, floris; custos, custodis.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. Three Nouns which have the Crement short; *bos, bovis; compos, compotis; impos, impotis.*

Of the CREMENTS of Nouns in US, YS, BS, PS, MS, T.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *us*?

A. Nouns in *us* have the Crement of the Genitive short; as, *corpus, corporis; vellus, velleris; tripus, tripodis.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. These Words which have *udis, uris, or utis,* in the Genitive, make the Penult *u* long; as, *incus, incudis; fur, furis; salus, salutis.*—Yet these of that Kind are excepted; *Liguris* from *Ligus*; *pecudis* from *pecus*; and *intercutis* from *intercus,* which are short.

2. Words in *us,* of the Comparative Degree, have the Crement long; as, *melius, melioris, &c.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *ys*?

A. Nouns in *ys* shorten the Crement of *ydis* and *yds*; as, *Chlamys, Chlamydis* or *yds.*—But they lengthen the Crement in *ynis*; as, *Trachys, Trachynis.*

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *bs, ps, ms*?

A. These Nouns, which have a Consonant before *s,* shorten the Penult of the Genitive; as, *cælebs, cælibis; Lælaps, Lælapis; Dolops, Dolopis; inops, inopis; auceps, aucupis; hiems, hiemis:* Also *anceps, ancipitis; biceps, bicipitis,* and the like Compounds from *caput.*

Q. What

Q. What are excepted ?

A. The following Nouns have the Penult long; *Cyclops, Cyclopi*; *f. ps, sepi*; *gryps, gryphis*; *Cercops, Cercopis*; *plebs, plebis*; *hydrops, hydropis*.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *t* ?

A. Nouns in *t* have the Crement of the Genitive short; as, *caput, capitis*; *sinciput, sincipitis*; *occiput, occipitis*.

Of the CREMENT in X.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement of Nouns in *x* ?

A. 1. Nouns in *x* shorten the Vowel before *gis*; as, *harpax, harpagis*; *aquilex, aquilegis*; *Allobrox, Allobrogis*; *conjux, conjugis*.—But you must except *lex, legis*; *coccyx, coccygis*, and *frux, frugis*, which are long.

2. Nouns in *ex* have *icis* short; as, *vertex, verticis*; *pontifex, pontificis*.—*Vibex, vibicis*, is long.

3. The rest of the Nouns in *x* have the Crement long: *Ax*; as, *pax, pacis*; *fornax, fornacis*. *Ex*; as, *halex, halecis*; *vervex, vervecis*. *Ix*; as, *radix, radicis*; *cicatrix, cicatricis*. *Ox*; as, *vox, vocis*; *velox, velocis*. *Ux*; as, *lux, lucis*; *Pollux, Pollucis*. *Yx*; as, *bombyx, bombycis*; *Ceyx, Ceycis*.—But from Nouns in *ax*, except the following which are short; *abax, abacis*; *smilax, smilacis*; *Atax, Atacis*; *dropax, dropacis*; *anthrax, anthracis*; *fax, facis*; *alax, alacis*; *climax, climacis*; *panax, panacis*; *styrax* or *storax, storacis*; *colax, colacis*, and some other such unusual Words.—From Nouns in *ex*, except *nex, necis*; also *vicis, precis*, which are deprived of the Nominative, and *senifex, senifecis*; *refex, refecis*, which are short. From Nouns in *ix* are excepted these Nouns, with the Penult short; *appendix, appendicis*; *fornix, fornicis*; *Cilix, Cilicis*; *calix, calicis*; *pix, picis*; *varix, varicis*; *filix, filicis*; *salix, salicis*; *carix, caricis*; *nix, nivis*.—These Words in *ox* have the Penult short; *Cappadox, Cappadocis*; *præcox, præcocis*.—And these Words in *ux*; *dux, ducis*; *crux, crucis*; *nux, nucis*; *trux, trucis*.—And in *yx*; as, *onyx, onychis*; *Eryx, Erycis*.

Of the CREMENTS in the Plural Number.

Q. What is the Quantity of the Crement in the Plural Number?

A. *A, e, o*, are long in the Crements of the Plural Number; as, *musarum, rerum, dominorum*.—But *i* and *u* in the Plural Number are short; as, *artibus* from *ars*, and *artubus* from *artus*.—But observe, that *bubus* or *bobus* is long, because it is contracted from *bovibus*.

162 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Of the CREMENTS of VERBS.

Q. WHAT is the Crement of a Verb;

A. The Crement of a Verb is when any Part of the Verb exceeds the second Person Singular of the Present of the Indicative Active, by one or more Syllables.——For when any Part of the Verb has no more Syllables than the second Person Singular of the Present, it has no Crement; as, *amas, amem.*

Q. When is the Verb said to have one Crement?

A. When the Verb exceeds the second Person of the Present, by one Syllable; as, *amamus, amatis*, where the Penult is the Crement, for the last Syllable can never be the Crement.

Q. When is the Verb said to have two Creements?

A. When it exceeds by two Syllables; as, *amabamus, amabatis*——If it exceeds by three, it has three Creements; as, *amaverimus, amaveritis*; and there will be four Creements, if it exceeds the second Person Singular of the Present by four Syllables; as, *audis, audiebamini.*

Q. What is to be done with Deponent Verbs, where there is no Active Voice, and consequently no second Person Singular of the Indicative Active?

A. We must suppose them to have the Active; and in this Way we come to know that *conatus* has one Crement, *conabatur* two, *conaremini* three, because if there was a second Person Singular of the Active Voice, it would be *conas*.

Q. Can ever the first Syllable be a Crement?

A. Yes; when the Verb itself is a Monosyllable; as, in *damus, fetis, scitis*, because *das, fies, scis*, are Monosyllables.

Of A in the CREMENTS of Verbs.

Q. What is the Quantity of *a* in the Creements of Verbs?

A. In every Crement *a* is long; as, *stābam, amārem, legēbamus, audiebāmini.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. The Verb *do*, and its Compounds of the first Conjugation, have *a* short in the first Crement; as, *damus, dabunt, dare*; also *circumdāmus, venundābo, &c.* But *a* in the other Creements of the Verb *do*, as also in all the Creements of its Compounds in the third Conjugation, is long; as, *dābamus, dederatis, credāmus, &c.*

Of

Of E in the CREMENTS of Verbs.

Q. What is the Quantity of *e* in the Crement of Verbs?

A. *E* is long in all the Creements of Verbs; as, *amemus, amāremus, amavissetis, docebam, docerem, legebat, legerunt, audiemus, audiere, &c.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. *E* before *r* is short, in the first Crement of any Present and Imperfect of the third Conjugation; as, *legeris* or *legere* in the Present of the Indicative Passive; *legere* in the Infinitive Active and Imperative Passive; and *legerem* and *legerer*, in the Imperfect Subjunctive, Active and Passive.

2., *Beris* and *bere* is always short; as, *amaberis, amabere, doceberis, docere.*

3. *E* before *ram, rim, ro,* is short through all the Persons; as, *amaveram, amaverim, amavero, eram, fueram, potero, &c.* —Observe, that in the Perfect of the Indicative, the Poets sometimes make *e* short before *runt*; as, *Obstupui, steteruntque comæ, et vox faucibus hæsit.*

Of I in the CREMENTS of Verbs.

Q. What is the Quantity of *i* in the Creements of Verbs?

A. *I* in any Crement is short; as, *amabimus, docebitur, legimus, cupitis, aggredimur,* and in all the Creements of the fourth Conjugation, except the first Crement; as, *audimini, audiremini, audiebamini.*

Q. What are excepted?

A. 1. *I* before *vi* is long in the Perfect; as, *petivi, quæsi, petivisti, quæsit, audiverunt.*

2. The first Crement of the fourth Conjugation is long; as, *audimus, auditur, ibam, ibo, sciremus, scirent, &c.* —But observe, that *imus* in all the Perfects, even in the fourth Conjugation, is short; as, *juvimus, vidimus, venimus,* in the first Crement; and *amavimus, adolevimus, pepercimus, munivimus,* in the second. —When therefore the Present and Perfect of the fourth Conjugation happen to be expressed by one Word, the Penult of the Present is long; as, *venimus, reperimus;* but the very same Words in the Perfect, must be pronounced short.

Of O and U in the CREMENTS of Verbs.

Q. What is the Quantity of *o* and *u* in the Creements of Verbs?

A. *O* is long in the Creements of Verbs; as, *amatote, facitote;* and *u* is short; as, *sumus, possumus, volumus.*

Of

OF VERSIFYING.

Q. WHAT is a Verse?

A. It is a Line composed of so many Feet, and determined as to Measure, by fixed Rules.

Q. What is the Foot of a Verse?

A. A Foot consists of one or more Syllables of a certain Quantity?

Q. What are these Feet which are most frequently used by the Latin Poets?

A. The following;

Pyrrhichius you well may know,	}	<i>v v</i> ; as, <i>Deus</i> .
By two short Syllab'es let him flow.		
Spondee requires two long; and next,	}	<i>- -</i> ; as, <i>omnes</i> .
Iambus comes among the rest;		
The first one short, the other long,	}	<i>v -</i> ; as, <i>pios</i> .
He still demands in every Song.		
Reverse the Iambus, and you'll find	}	<i>- v</i> ; as, <i>servat</i> .
The long one first, the short behind;		
This makes Trocheus. Next in Place,	}	
Is Dactylus who fills his Space,		
With one long Syllab'e, and two short,	}	<i>- v v</i> ; as, <i>carmina</i> .
And sounds the more majestic for't.		
Two Syllab'es short, before one long,	}	<i>v v -</i> ; as, <i>animos</i> .
Make Anapæstus in a Song.		
Three short ones Tribrachys requires,	}	<i>v v v</i> ; as, <i>melius</i> .
Three long Molossus still desires.		<i>- - -</i> ; as, <i>reluctant</i> .
With short, and long, and short again,	}	<i>v - v</i> ; as, <i>honore</i> .
Amphibrachys thou must remain.		
But Syllab'es of a different Kind,	}	
Compose Amphimacer; inclin'd,		<i>- v -</i> ; as, <i>insito</i> .
On each Side of one short to place,	}	
A long one with a nobler Grace.		
The last but one among the Throng,	}	<i>v - -</i> ; as, <i>dolores</i> .
Is Bacchius, one short, two long.		
And Antibacchius ends the Sport,	}	<i>- - v</i> ; as, <i>pelluntur</i> .
With two long Syllab'es and a short.		

Besides these Feet, there are a Number of others which cannot be well exprest in Verse; nor would it be agreeable to a good Ear, to be confounded with too much Harshness of this Kind. The only Thing that moved me to offend the Muses in this Part of the Grammar, was the Necessity Boys are under of remembring the different Feet well, before they are able to scan

scan a Verse; and that I thought, at the same Time, they would the easier get them by Heart, that they were in Verse.--- As for the other Feet, I shall only mention three, because we meet with them in *Horace*, and pass over the rest, which are not so often to be met with in the Poets.

The *Choriambus* consists of a long, two short, and a long :
- v v - ; as, *nobilitas*.

The *Ionicus a majore* consists of two long, and two short :
- - v v ; as, *calcaribus*.

The *Ionicus a minore* consists of two short, and two long :
v v - - ; as, *properabant*.

Of the FIGURES in Profody.

Q. What are the Figures generally used in Poetry?

A. *Synalæpha*, *Æthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, *Diaſtole*, *Systole*, *Dialysis*.

Q. What is it you call *Synalæpha*?

A. *Synalæpha* is the Elision or casting away a Vowel or Diphthong, when the following Word begins with a Vowel ; as, instead of

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant.

We read and scan thus:

Conticuer' omnes, intentiqu' ora tenebant.

Q. Are there any Examples where this Rule does not take Place?

A. Yes; the Vowel is generally preserved in the Interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

Heu! ubi pacta fides? ubi quæ jurare solebas?

Ah! ego non possum tanta videre mala.

Q. What is *Æthlipsis*?

A. *Æthlipsis* is when we cut off *m*, with the Vowel before it, in the End of Words, because the following begins with a Vowel; as, instead of

*O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane!—*we read,
O curas homin' O quant' est in rebus inane!

Q. What is *Synæresis*?

A. *Synæresis* is the Contraction of two Syllables, where two Vowels meet together in the same Word, into one, as *æ* into *a*; as, *Phæton*, *Phæton*: *ei* into *ei*; as, *Thesæi* of three Syllables into *Thesæi* of two; and by contracting *ui* in *cui*, *huic*, into one Syllable; as,

Filius huic contra, torquet qui sidera mundi.

Q. What

166 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. What is *Diæresis*?

A. *Diæresis*, on the contrary, is the dissolving one Syllable into two; as, *aulai*, *aurai*, for *aulæ*, *auræ*; *siluæ* for *siuæ*, &c. as,

Aulaë in medio libabant pocula Bacchi.

Aurarum et siluæ metu, &c.

Q. What is *Diaſtole*?

A. *Diaſtole* makes a short Syllable long; as,

Atque hic Priamides: Nihil ô tibi, amice, relictum.

Et domus intactæ te tremit Arabiæ.

In this Example, *Priamides* and *Arabiæ* have the first long, which are naturally short; since their Primitives *Priamus* and *Arabs*, have that Syllable always short.

Q. What is *Systole*?

A. *Systole* is when a long Syllable is made short, as in this Example:

Obstupui ſteteruntque comæ, &c.—The second *e* is short.

Q. What is *Dialyſis*?

A. *Dialyſis* is a Figure which divides a Word, ſo as to leave the first Part of it at the End of one Line, and to begin the following with the other Part; as,

————— *Inter-*
Lunia vento.

Of the different Kinds of VERSE.

Q. How many different Kinds of Verse are most commonly used?

A. Thirteen: *Hexameter*, *Pentameter*, *Aſclepiadæan*, *Glyſſonian*, *Sapphic*, *Adonian*, *Phæleucian*, *Phærecræatian*, *Iambic*, *Scæzon* or *Choliambic*, *Anacreontic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapæſtic*.—Of these in Order: And first,

• OF HEXAMETER or HEROIC Verse.

Six Feet Heroic Verse requires,
The fifth Place Dactylus admires,
The sixth Spondæus loves: The rest,
Are the same Feet where you think best.
In any Place they well may stand,
The Poet rules them at command.

Q. Give

Q. Give me an Example of Hexameters ?

Aut prodesse volunt aut delectare Poëta.

Tu nihil invitâ dicas faciasve Minervâ.

Intonsi crines longâ cervice fluebant.

Q. How do you scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
<i>Aut pro-</i>	<i>desse vo-</i>	<i>lunt aut</i>	<i>dele-</i>	<i>ctare Po-</i>	<i>ëtæ.</i>
<i>Tu nihil</i>	<i>invi-</i>	<i>tâ di-</i>	<i>cas faci-</i>	<i>asve Mi-</i>	<i>nervâ.</i>
<i>Inton-</i>	<i>si cri-</i>	<i>nes lon-</i>	<i>gâ cer-</i>	<i>vice fu-</i>	<i>ebant.</i>

Where you may observe, that Dactylus, according to the Rule, is always in the fifth Place, and Spondee in the sixth, or last.

Q. Is not Spondee sometimes in the fifth Place ?

A. Yes ; when the Gravity or Dignity of the Subject requires it.

Q. Give me an Example ?

Cara Deûm soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.

Which must be scan'd in this Manner :

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
<i>Cara De-</i>	<i>um sobo-</i>	<i>les mag-</i>	<i>num Jovis</i>	<i>incre-</i>	<i>mentum.</i>

OF PENTAMETER Verse.

Would you Pentameters compose,
Five Feet the Harmony must close.
Spondee and Dactyle always grace,
Either the first or second Place.
Then comes Spondee to molest us,
The fourth and fifth take Anapæstus.

Or if you please, to scan this Verse,
Another Way I shall rehearse :
Dactyle and Spondee, as above,
Do still the two first Places love.
Cæsure with one Syllable long
Comes next in Order in the Song,
Follow'd by Dactyle twice repeated,
And by Cæsure all's compleated.

Q. Give me an Example of Pentameters ?

Naturæ sequitur semina quisque suæ.

Carminibus vives tempus in omne meis.

Q. Let

168 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Let me hear you scan these Verses?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Natu-	ræ sequi-	tur se-	mina quis-	que suæ.
Carmini-	bus vi-	ves tem-	pus in o-	mne meis.

Where the two first are either Dactyles or Spondees promiscuously, the third always Spondeus, the fourth and fifth Anapæstus, according to the Rule.

Q. Let me hear you scan them according to the second Rule?

1.	2.	$\frac{1}{2}$	3.	4.	$\frac{1}{2}$
Natu-	ræ sequi-	tur	semina	quisque su-	æ.
Carmini-	bus vi-	ves	tempus in	omne me-	is.

Where the two first Feet are Dactyles or Spondees, as the Quantity requires; the third is Cæsura, and the two last Feet are Dactyles, followed by another Cæsura.

OF ASCLEPIADÆAN Verse.

Thy Verse Asclepias let me now,
Expose into the publick View,
Consisting of four Feet: Spondeus,
Two Choriambus' and Pyrrhichius.

Except you chuse this other Way,
With which the Poets also play:
Spondeus claims the foremost Place,
Whom Dactyle and Cæsura chase;
Then last of all to close the Rear,
Let two brave Dactylus' appear.

Q. Give me an Example of Asclepiadæan Verse?
Mæcenatavis edite regibus.

Q. Let me hear you scan this Line?

1.	2.	3.	4.
Mæce-	natavis	edite re-	gibus.

Where the first is Spondeus, followed by two Choriambuses and a Pyrrhichius, according to the Rule.

Q. What is the other Way of scanning this Verse?

1.	2.	$\frac{1}{2}$	3.	4.
Mæce-	natata-	vis	edite	regibus.

Where the first Foot is Spondee, the second Dactylus, followed by a Cæsura, the third and fourth Dactyles.

Of

OF GLYCONIAN Verse.

The Verse of Glycon has three Feet,
Which after one another meet.
Spondeus first, then Choriambus,
And after him the swift Pyrrhichius.
Tho' other Poets scan it thus,
First Spondee, then twice Daçtylus.

Q. Give an Example of Glyconian Verse?

Mens regnum bona possidet.

Q. Scan this Line?

1. 2. 3.
Mens re- | gnum bona pos- | sidet.

Where according to the Rule, we find a Spondee, a Choriambus, and a Pyrrhichius, after one another.

The second Way of scanning it, is as follows;

1. 2. 3.
Mens re- | gnum bona | possidet.

Where, according to the second Part of the Rule, the first is a Spondee, and the other two are Daçtyles.

OF SAPPHIC Verse.

Let him who strikes the Sapphic Lyre,
The sounding Trochee first inspire;
His Heart let Spondee next alarm,
Then give the Daçtyle Power to charm.
And that the whole may brighter shine,
Two Trochees must conclude the Line.
Thus crown'd with five harmonious Feet,
The Sapphic Verse will be compleat.
The Adonian Verse concludes the Round,
Where Daçtylus and Spondee sound.

Q. Give me an Example of the Sapphic and Adonian Verse?

*Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti, caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ.*

Y

Q. Scan

170 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

Q. Scan those Verses?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Aure-	am quif-	quis medi-	ocri-	tatem
Dili-	git, tu-	tus caret	obso-	leti
Sordi-	bus te-	cti, caret	invi-	dendâ

1.	2.
Sobrius	aulâ.

In the three first Lines you'll observe the greatest Agreement with the Rule for Sapphic Verse, the first Foot being Trochæus, the second Spondeus, the third Dactylus, the fourth and fifth Trochæus.——And agreeable to the Adonian Verse, the first Foot in the fourth Line is Dactylus, the last Spondeus.

OF PHALEUCIAN Verse.

Would you Phaleucian Verses write,
Five Feet it takes to make them right;
The Spondee first, the Dactyle next,
To which three Trochees must be fix'd.

Q. Give me an Example of Phaleucian Verse?

Quod sis, esse velis, nihilque malis.

Summam nec metuas diem, nec optes.

Q. Scan these Verses?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Quod sis	esse ve-	lis, ni-	hilque	malis.
Summam	nec metu-	as di-	em, nec	optes.

Agreeable to the Rule, you find Spondeus in the first Place, Dactylus in the second, and three Trochees in the rest.

OF PHERECRATIAN Verse.

When Pherecratian Lines you make,
Spondee, Dactyle, Spondee, take.

Q. Give me an Example of the Pherecratian Verse?

Nigris æquora ventis.

Q. Scan this Line?

1.	2.	3.
Nigris	æquora	ventis.

Here there are three Feet, as the Rule requires, Spondeus, Dactylus, and Spondeus.

Of

Of IAMBIC Verse.

The careful Scholar quickly finds
Iambic Verse is of two Kinds.
The Trimeter, which has six Feet;
And Dimeter which four compleat.
But all Men know, except a Fool,
That both are scann'd by the same Rule:
Which is to make Iambus shine,
In even Numbers every Line.
Uneven Numbers rather crave
Dactyle and Spondee to receive.
Where ev'n to please the wanton Ear,
The Anapæstus does appear.
Iambus too we sometimes see,
Quite different from himself to be,
And choosing Places odd for equal,
Nor ever thinks upon the Sequel.
Nay Tribrachys, which runs so fast,
Assumes all Places but the last,
Which always must Iambus be,
Or else you spoil the Harmony.

Q. Was not the Iambus at first, the only Foot, in what you call Iambic Verse?

A. Yes.

Q. Give me an Example of the pure Iambic Dimeter, consisting of four Feet?

Inar sit æstuo sius.

Q. Scan it?

1. | 2. | 3. | 4.
Inar- | sit æ- | stuo- | sius.

Q. Give me an Example of the pure Iambic Trimeter, consisting of six Feet?

Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

Q. Scan it?

1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. | 6.
Suis | et i- | psa Ro- | ma vi- | ribus | ruit.

Q. Give me an Example of Iambic Verses, where, for the greater Ease of composing in this Way, the Spondee is taken into the unequal Places, that is, into the first, third, and fifth.

Dimeter

172 *RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.*

Dimeter. *Forti sequemur pectore.*

Trimeter. *Pars sanitatis velle sanari fuit.*

Q. Scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
<i>Forti</i>	<i>seque-</i>	<i>mur pe-</i>	<i>ctore.</i>		
<i>Pars sa-</i>	<i>nita-</i>	<i>tis vel-</i>	<i>le sa-</i>	<i>nari</i>	<i>fuit.</i>

Where you may observe, that the Dimeter has no Feet in the fifth and sixth Place, because it consists only of four.

Q. Give me an Example of Dimeter and Trimeter Iambics, which, instead of Iambus and Spondeus, are scanned in the unequal Places by Anapæstus, Dactylus, and sometimes Tribrachys; and which, in the equal Places, that is, the second and fourth, also admit of Tribrachys; for the sixth Place must always be an Iambus ?

Dim.	{	<i>Canidia tractavit dapes.</i>	
	{	<i>Videre properantes domum.</i>	
Trim.	{	<i>Quò quò scelesti ruitis aut cur dexteris.</i>	
	{	<i>Priusque cælum fidet inferius mari.</i>	
	{	<i>Alitibus atque canibus homicidam Heclorem.</i>	
	{	<i>Pavidumque leporem aut advenam laqueo gruem.</i>	

Q. Scan these Verses ?

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Dim.	{	<i>Canidi-</i>	<i>a tra-</i>	<i>ctavit</i>	<i>dapes.</i>	
	{	<i>Vide-</i>	<i>re prope-</i>	<i>rantes</i>	<i>domum.</i>	
Trim.	{	<i>Quò quò</i>	<i>scele-</i>	<i>sti rui-</i>	<i>tis aut</i>	<i>cur dex-</i>
	{	<i>Prius-</i>	<i>que cæ-</i>	<i>lum si-</i>	<i>det in-</i>	<i>ferius</i>
	{	<i>Aliti-</i>	<i>bus at-</i>	<i>que cani-</i>	<i>bus homi-</i>	<i>cid' He-</i>
	{	<i>Pavidum</i>	<i>que lepo-</i>	<i>r' aut ad-</i>	<i>venam</i>	<i>laqueo</i>
						<i>gruem.</i>

You'll observe in the first Line of the Dimeter, that in place of Iambus or Spondeus, we find *Canidi-* Dactylus.—And in the second Line of the Dimeters, in the second Place, instead of Iambus, we read *re prope-* Tribrachys.—In the third Place of the first Line of Trimeters, we read *sti rui-* Dactylus — In the fifth Place of the second Line of Trimeters, we find *ferius* Anapæstus.—In the first and third Places of the third Line, we find *Aliti-* Tribrachys, *que cani-* Tribrachys.—In the first and fifth Places of the last Line, we meet with two Anapæstus's, *Pavidum*, *laqueo*; and in the second Place of the same Line, *que lepo-* Tribrachys:

OF SCAZONIAN or CHOLIAMBIC Verse.

Like the Iambic Verse we find,
The Choliambic much inclin'd ;
Which in the fifth Place takes Iambus,
And to the sixth prefers Spondeus.
The other four Feet are the same,
Which Trimeter Iambics claim.

Q. Give me an Example of Scazonian or Choliambic Verse ?

Miser Catulle, desinas ineptire.
Fulsere quondam candidi tibi soles.
Cur in theatrum Cato severe, venisti ?
An ideo tantum veneras, ut exires ?

Q. Scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
<i>Miser</i>	<i>Catul-</i>	<i>le, de-</i>	<i>sinas</i>	<i>ine-</i>	<i>ptire.</i>
<i>Fulsê-</i>	<i>re quon-</i>	<i>dum can-</i>	<i>didi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>soles.</i>
<i>Cur in</i>	<i>thea-</i>	<i>trum Cato</i>	<i>seve-</i>	<i>re, ve-</i>	<i>nisti ?</i>
<i>An ide-</i>	<i>ò tan-</i>	<i>tum ve-</i>	<i>neras,</i>	<i>ut ex-</i>	<i>ires ?</i>

In these Verses, there is always an Iambus in the fifth Place, and a Spondee in the sixth. The rest of the Feet observe the same Rules with the Trimeter Iambic Verse, according to the Rule.

OF ANACREONTIC Verse.

Thy Verse, Anacreon, more than all,
Melodious is and musical.—
Without Distinction first he plac'd
Iambus, Spondy, Anapæst ;
Nay, Tribrachys sometimes supplies,
The first Place, when he versifies.
Iambus fills the third and second,
And last of all Cæsura's reckon'd.

Q. Give me an Example of Anacreontic Verse ?

Ades pater supreme,
Quem nemo vidit unquam.
Habet omnis hoc voluptas,
Stimulis agit furentes.

Q. Scan

174 **RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.**

Q. Scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	3.	$\frac{1}{2}$
<i>Ades</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>supre-</i>	<i>me,</i>
<i>Quem ne-</i>	<i>mo vi-</i>	<i>dit un-</i>	<i>quam.</i>
<i>Habet o-</i>	<i>mnis hoc</i>	<i>volu-</i>	<i>ptas,</i>
<i>Stimulis</i>	<i>agit</i>	<i>furen-</i>	<i>tes.</i>

In the first Line the first Foot is Iambus, and the first Foot in the second is Spondeus; in the third Line the first Foot is Anapæstus, and the first Foot in the fourth Line is Tribrachys, all agreeable to the Rule.—The second and third Feet are always Iambus, followed by a Cæsuræ, or long Syllable.

OF TROCHAIC Verse.

Trochaic Verses next demand
A little of our helping Hand.
Eight Feet this Kind of Measure graces,
And, like th' Iambic, the odd Places
Are fill'd with certain Kinds of Feet,
Or Tribrachys, or Trochee sweet.
Except the seventh or last but one,
Which by Trochæus you must scan,
Clos'd by Cæsuræ, which you know,
With one long Foot, 'moves always flow.
The Numbers which we reckon even,
No fewer Feet require than seven;
For they take Trochee, Tribrachys,
Anapæst, Spondee, Dactylus,
And sometimes Proceleusmaticus. }
But Verse like this ne'er takes Iambus,
Nor will Iambics take Trochæus.

Q. Give me an Example of Trochaic Verse ?

*Consules fiunt quotannis, et novi proconsules :
Solus aut rex, aut poëta non quotannis nascitur.*

Q. Scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	$\frac{1}{2}$
<i>Consu-</i>	<i>les fi-</i>	<i>unt quot-</i>	<i>annis, et no-</i>	<i>vi Pro-</i>	<i>consu-</i>	<i>les:</i>	
<i>Solus</i>	<i>aut rex,</i>	<i>aut po-</i>	<i>ëta</i>	<i>non quot-</i>	<i>annis</i>	<i>nasci-</i>	<i>tur.</i>

Here you may observe, according to the Rule, that in the unequal Places of these Examples, no Foot is made use of but the Trochæus; the last Place but one must always be Trochæus.—

But

But in the equal Places, instead of Trochæus and Spondeus, used in the present Examples, there are many Verses of this Kind in *Terence*, where they also use Tribrachys, Dactylus, Anapæstus, and sometimes, but very seldom, Proceleusmaticus; but never the Iambus, which is by no Means allowable in Trochaic Verse.

OF ANAPÆSTIC Verse.

The Anapæstic Verse must here,
In its own Form and Shape appear;
Where Anapæstus well may stand,
In any Place, on any Hand.
But yet the sweetest of this Kind,
Are reckon'd those, in which we find
The Spondee and the Dactyle fix'd,
And with the Anapæstus mix'd;
In such a Manner that the Dactyle,
From fourth and second is an Exile:
The other Places, it may take
At Pleasure, for Variety's Sake.
Thus *Aristophanes* and *Pindar*,
Have wrote, and made the World wonder.

Q. Give me an Example of the Anapæstic Verse?

Quanti casus humana rotant:
Minus in parvis fortuna furit,
Leviùsque ferit leviora Deus.

Q. Scan these Verses?

1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>Quanti</i>	<i>casus</i>	<i>huma-</i>	<i>na rotant:</i>
<i>Minus in</i>	<i>parvis</i>	<i>fortu-</i>	<i>na furit,</i>
<i>Leviùs-</i>	<i>que ferit</i>	<i>levio-</i>	<i>ra Deus.</i>

Here you observe a Mixture of Spondees and the Feet called Dactyles, mixt with Anapæstus, according to the Rule.—But Dactylus is hardly ever found in the the second or fourth Place.

OF HORATIAN Verse.

Now, *Horace*, let me plainly tell
That Verse in which you wrote so well;
By all the Poets justly fam'd,
And by the World *Horatian* nam'd.
The first two Lines are still the same,
Nor different Feet in scanning claim.

The

176 RUDIMENTS of the LATIN TONGUE.

The first is Spondee or Iambus,
 But oftner Spondee than Iambus ;
 Cæsura next does still appear,
 And then two Dactyles in the Rear.
 The third Line, like Iambic Verse
 Is scann'd, as I shall now rehearse.
 The Spondees in odd Places come,
 Tho' oft Iambus fills their Room ;
 The fourth and second Place demand
 Iambus only there to stand.
 Cæsura follows after all,
 To make the Verse more musical.
 But lo ! when all the Labour's past,
 The fourth Line now appears at last,
 Where in the first and second Place,
 Two Dactyles stare you in the Face :
 But none but Trochee can resort,
 Or stand into the third and fourth.

Q. Give me an Example of Horatian Verse ?

*Virtus repulsæ nescia sordidæ
 Intaminatis fulget honoribus :
 Nec sumit, aut ponit secures
 Arbitrio popularis auræ.*

Q. Scan these Verses ?

1.	2.	$\frac{1}{2}$	3.	4.
Virtus	repul-	sæ	nescia	sordidæ
Inta-	mina-	tis	fulget ho-	noribus.

In these two Lines, according to the Rule, you find that the first Foot is a Spondee, (sometimes an Iambus,) the second is always Iambus, then follows Cæsura, and last of all two Dactyles.

1.	2.	3.	4.	$\frac{1}{2}$
Nec su-	mit aut	ponit	secu-	res.

This third Line is also agreeable to the Rule, which admits of Spondeus, and sometimes Iambus, in the first and third Place ; the second and fourth Feet are always Iambus, and the last is Cæsura.

1.	2.	3.	4.
Arbitri-	o popu-	laris	auræ.

The fourth and last Line of the Horatian Verse takes two Dactyles for the two first Places, and two Trochees for the two last.



the
l is
wo

of
ce;
t is

we
we